COMMUNICATION STRATEGIES IN SECOND LANGUAGE TEACHER TALK WITH SPECIAL REFERENCE TO IRANIAN TEACHERS OF ENGLISH

MOHAMMAD REZA ANANI SARAB

Submitted in accordance with the requirements for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy

School of Education
The University of Leeds

The candidate confirms that the work submitted is his own and that appropriate credit has been given where reference has been made to the work of others.

OCTOBER 2003
Acknowledgements

I would like to thank all the individuals and institutions whose contributions were essential for the development of my PhD project, as well as for the writing of this thesis.

First, I am greatly indebted to Martin Bygate for supervising the development of my PhD project. His insightful comments, stimulating discussions, and above all his unbounded enthusiasm support and encouragement have given me the energy and self-confidence to work on this project. Without his critical acumen in reading through the drafts of the thesis, I would not have been able to set out and pursue this work through to its conclusion. He has been of immense support to me not only in the development and writing up of the thesis but also in helping me to cope with periods of personal difficulties.

Second, I am thankful to Virginia Samuda for her very helpful suggestion on task selection, and to all the teaching staff at the School of Education of the University of Leeds for their constant academic support; my special thanks go to Mike Baynham, Lynne Cameron, and Jenny Jarvis. I am also greatly indebted to John Leech for his assistance and support in the early stage of my PhD programme before an after registration.

Third, I am very grateful to the Ministry of Science, Research, and Technology for granting me the scholarship and for all the assistance they provided me during my stay in the UK to complete my PhD programme.

Fourth, my special thanks go to the teachers and students at the four institutions where the data for the research study were collected. The voluntary contributions of the teachers and students at University of Leeds Language Centre, Brudenell Community Language Centre, Kish Language Institute, and Iran Language Institute will always be remembered.

Fifth, I am thankful to all the support staff in the school of education whose assistance over the years has contributed to my study. Apologise for probably not acknowledging every name, I am particularly grateful to Margaret Taylor, Sue Longergan, Mary Hunter, Mary Braithwaite, Jane Orton, Frank Gilmore, Andrew Cole, Richard Sykes, and Ben Holmes.

Sixth, I would like to express my sincere thanks to my friends Abbas Sheikholeslami for his assistance in data collection in Iran, and Juup Stelma and Farahman Farrokhi for their cooperation in conducting a reliability check on the category system.

Lastly and especially I thank my wife, Zhila, and my son and daughter, Saeed and Sodabeh, whose courage and determination in facing up to the challenges of living abroad and enduring the absence of my company during months, days and nights over the course of my studies have been a great source of comfort to me. This has, without doubt, made an immense contribution to my study, and one which I will never forget.
Abstract

The focus of this study is the use of communication strategies in teacher talk in ESL/EFL classrooms. Communication strategies consist of adjustments made by speakers to the formulation of their talk in order to facilitate communication, and these are clearly a potentially important aspect of teacher talk. Limiting communication strategies to those adaptations evident in the details of the interaction, the study uses a mixed method design to investigates firstly the type and frequency of communication strategies and their patterns of relationship across teachers grouped in terms of language background and teaching institution; and secondly the type and frequency of strategy use in relation to the focus of talk across the different phases of a standard lesson. The participants were three native speaker and six non-native speaker teachers, across three different ESL/EFL instructional settings. The data consist of a total of twenty seven recordings. made up of three lessons with each teacher.

The study reports results from three phases of analysis. The categorisation phase leads to an operational definition of communication strategies which integrates conversational modifications with lexical-compensatory strategies. The quantification phase of the analysis shows that the two types of strategy occur with different frequencies and functions. No important differences were found between NS and NNS teachers. However, significant task-related differences were detected. Finally a case study of three teachers revealed a relationship between the focus of talk and the incidence of communication strategies across the phases of the analysed lesson. The implications of these results are firstly that communication strategies are indeed a central element of teacher talk; secondly, that lexical-compensatory strategies and meaning negotiation strategies both contribute significantly to the construct; thirdly, that their use is important for both native speaker and non-native speaker teachers; fourthly, that they are used with significantly different frequencies and functions; and finally, that their use is influenced by teaching focus and activity type. It is also likely to be affected by factors such as teaching style. The thesis argues that, on the basis of the findings, further research into the use of communication strategies in teacher talk could make a significant contribution to teacher education.
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

## Volume I

### CHAPTER 1  INTRODUCTION ...................................................... 1
  1.1 Focus of the study ................................................................. 1
  1.2 Research aims ........................................................................ 4
  1.3 Rationale ............................................................................... 5
  1.4 Organisation of the thesis .................................................... 7

### CHAPTER 2  REVIEW OF LITERATURE ...................................... 8
  2.1 Introduction .......................................................................... 8
  2.2 Defining communication strategies ....................................... 8
    2.2.1 Classification of communication strategies .................. 9
  2.3 The psycholinguistic perspective .......................................... 12
  2.4 The interactive perspective ................................................ 15
    2.4.1 Interactional modifications ......................................... 20
    2.4.2 Repair in classroom interaction .................................. 26
  2.5 Toward a typology of communication strategies .................... 29
    2.5.1 Theoretical Underpinnings ........................................ 33
    2.5.2 Methodological considerations ................................. 36
  2.6 Pedagogic categories in teacher talk .................................... 40
  2.7 Teacher Talk and Classroom Interaction ............................... 44
    2.7.1 Classroom interaction patterns ................................... 44
    2.7.2 Classroom interaction patterns as learning contexts ...... 47
    2.7.3 Teacher-fronted classroom interaction as ritual .......... 48
  2.8 Summary .............................................................................. 53

### CHAPTER 3  RESEARCH DESIGN AND METHODOLOGY .................. 55
  3.1 Introduction .......................................................................... 55
  3.2 Methodological Framework ................................................. 55
  3.3 Research questions ............................................................. 57
  3.4 Pilot study ............................................................................ 58
    3.4.1 Data collection procedures ........................................ 58
    3.4.2 Developing the framework of analysis ....................... 59
    3.4.3 Context of Use .......................................................... 68
4.3.2.2 Lexical-compensatory/concept identification strategies ........................................... 135
4.4 The functions of CSs in classroom interaction ............................................................... 145
4.5 Summary ....................................................................................................................... 150

CHAPTER 5 QUANTITATIVE ANALYSIS .............................................................................. 152
5.1 Introduction ................................................................................................................... 152
5.2 Overall level of strategy use ....................................................................................... 152
5.3 Patterns of strategy use ............................................................................................... 158
5.4 Summary ....................................................................................................................... 165

CHAPTER 6 MICROANALYSIS ............................................................................................ 170
6.1 Introduction ................................................................................................................... 170
6.2 Overview of the talk of the three teachers ................................................................. 171
6.2.1 Overall distribution of the talk of the three teachers ............................................. 171
6.2.2 Phases and steps of the lesson .............................................................................. 172
6.2.3 Types of questions of the three teachers .............................................................. 173
6.2.4 Students’ level of participation ............................................................................. 174
6.3 Case study reports ....................................................................................................... 176
6.3.1 Teacher 3 ............................................................................................................. 177
6.3.2 Teacher 4 ............................................................................................................. 186
6.3.3 Teacher 7 ............................................................................................................. 196
6.4 Summary ....................................................................................................................... 204

CHAPTER 7 DISCUSSION .................................................................................................... 208
7.1 Introduction ................................................................................................................... 208
7.2 Summary of results ..................................................................................................... 209
7.3 Discussion ..................................................................................................................... 212
7.3.1 Categorisation ..................................................................................................... 212
7.3.2 Quantitative analysis ......................................................................................... 216
7.3.3 Microanalysis ..................................................................................................... 224
7.4 Theoretical Implications ......................................................................................... 226
7.4.1 The analysis of teachers’ strategies ................................................................. 226
7.4.2 Pedagogical implications ..................................................................................... 232
7.5 Methodological implications ..................................................................................... 235
7.6 Limitations of the study ........................................................................................................... 237
7.7 Suggestions for further research ............................................................................................ 238

CHAPTER 8 CONCLUSION ............................................................................................................. 239

BIBLIOGRAPHY ............................................................................................................................. 243
APPENDIX 1: Transcription conventions .................................................................................... 252
APPENDIX 2: Coding scheme ....................................................................................................... 253
APPENDIX 3: A sample of communication strategies ................................................................. 254
APPENDIX 4: A coded excerpt from lesson 3 using the microanalysis category scheme ............ 279
APPENDIX 5: The tasks used in lesson three .............................................................................. 263
APPENDIX 6: Suggested procedures in conducting the tasks in lesson three .............................. 266
APPENDIX 7: Stimulated recall interview with teacher I ............................................................. 268
APPENDIX 8: Background questionnaire ..................................................................................... 270
APPENDIX 9: Interobserver agreement check ............................................................................. 273
APPENDIX 10: Frequency distribution of teachers’ CSs in lesson 1, 2, and 3 ............................. 276

Volume II
APPENDIX 11: Lesson transcripts ................................................................................................ 281
T1 (3rd Session) .......................................................................................................................... 281
T2 (3rd Session) .......................................................................................................................... 309
T3 (3rd Session) .......................................................................................................................... 330
T4 (3rd Session) .......................................................................................................................... 355
T5 (1st Session) ........................................................................................................................... 393
T6 (3rd Session) .......................................................................................................................... 413
T7 (3rd Session) .......................................................................................................................... 429
T8 (3rd Session) .......................................................................................................................... 441
T9 (2nd Session) .......................................................................................................................... 460
to take photographs?

S: yeah

S: a translator

T: a translator,

53 you mean a person or a?

S3: [yes

T: you mean a person,

S: a person when you could have =

[yes huh

T: = that, ok, err or dictionary?

59 Did you mean a dictionary or just somebody you =

S3: [somebody huh

T: = [+ + +] ok!

S: a guide [+ + +]

T: a guide, Right,

64 a guide book of some sort, ok

65 and the visa or essential things you think of,

66 are they essential? or?

S: well I think the most important thing is information,

T: ok, information,

69 information about what for example?

S: maybe ways you can get there or anything else

T: ok, information about the country you’re visiting

72 how to travel there err

73 where you’re staying when you get there, ok

74 And this is essential, yeah, ok

75 that’s fine

76 now err if you look at the sheets that you’ve just been handed ok?

Err we’ve got to think about an imaginary situation that you may err you may actually know these type of situation so it’s not so imaginary actually

Err a friend of yours from your country of origin is planning a short vacation in the UK Vacation?

S: holiday

T: holiday, yeah

What sort of English is vacation?

It’s a particular type of English

Is it British English?

S: it’s American

T: it’s American English

Absolutely yeah

It’s American English

Err this guy is not a British citizen so he have to deal with immigration and customs when she enters the United Kingdom ok?

Now, she doesn’t have much room to pack a lot of things because she is planning to travel with just a backpack

H what’s a backpack?

S3: it’s a bag

T: [a bag huh

SS: huh

T: ok, yeah it’s just a little pack that you wear on your back ok Or rucksack basically isn’t it?

Now, in the box you’ve got a list of some other things that she’s thinking of taking with her, ok?

Now what I want you to do is in pairs

and I’m gonna- I’m not gonna give you much time because I’m- I expect you to know most of these words

I want you to look at the list of the words
items in the box
102 and I want you to check with
103 the person next to you, that you
104 understand what those words
105 are
106 If you don’t err a quick check in
107 the dictionary and I’m gonna
108 ask you to tell me what the
109 words mean, ok?
110 So H you work with A
111 make sure you know
112 if you don’t know maybe the
113 person next to you knows
114 ok, I’ll give a couple more
115 minutes and then I’m gonna ask
116 you

(pair work)

T: 109 right, ok
110 Now, very quickly what I want
111 you to do is I’m going to ask
112 somebody to give me err a
113 definition or an explanation or
114 illustration of what a particular
115 word means
116 so could we start with- ok, A!
117 Tell me show me what is a surf
118 board?
S2: 113 a surf board is in a sea on wave
T: 114 ok, right
115 Can you show me how you
116 surf?
S: 116 [showing
T: 117 huh you know how to surf?
S: 118 [++]
T: 119 ok, right, ok
120 What is surf though?
121 Ok, you use it on the waves
122 Do you know what the surf
123 means?
S3: 123 surf is on top of anything
T: 124 yeah, you know the white stuff
125 on the top of the waves
126 this is the surf
127 Actually you can surf here

There are places in Britain you
128 can surf
129 I think it’s a more practical err
T: 130 right ok
131 What’s a lap?
S1: 132 (miming)
T: 133 yeah, this is your lap
134 so you see people on trains err
people with very small
135 computers very expensive
136 actually laptops err but nice
S: 135 it cost a thousand pound
T: 136 yeah, I think so
137 I think they’re very expensive
138 but they look very nice
139 I think if I’ve got one I wouldn’t
140 actually travel with it
141 it would be dangerous ok, then
142 Err let’s see
143 Err hiking boots H?
144 Hiking boots?
S3: 143 I think this is just for [++]
144 it’s like a shoe
T: 145 yeah, these are shoes used for
146 Hiking is walking often
147 climbing
148 How many people go hiking?
149 Anybody doing hiking?
S3: 149 [I used to
go because I think there is no
mountain huh
T: 150 no mountains!
S: 151 yeah
T: 152 no mountains in Britain?
S: 153 yeah
T: 154 maybe not mountains actually
155 but in Scotland actually I think
perhaps is
156 But the lake district lots of places you can go with hiking boots, ok!

157 Credit card!

S: 158 credit card is that card for you can spend money and then after that the money you pay back

T: 160 ok, right a credit card is one you can pay for everything you buy and then err pay later

S3: 161 you don’t need to pay some money

T: 162 right, ok! yes it’s substitute for money isn’t it?

164 Ok credit cards

165 Lots of people get into trouble with credit cards

S3: 166 huh

T: 167 yeah?

168 Did you get into trouble with credit cards?

169 Ok! umbrella is an easy one

170 H what’s the meaning of this word?

S3: 171 we know huh

SS: 172 huh

S3: 173 it has got a handle

T: 174 [yeah

S3: 175 and long surface to prote- to err no(,) keep safe from raining huh

T: 176 yeah what’s the word what’s the word we are going to use?

S3: 177 pro- protect?

T: 178 protect yeah protecting from rain or prevent rain ok

179 Err photographs of hometown have you heard that?

180 A hometown A?

S2: 181 hometown (saying it to himself)

T: 182 what’s your hometown?

183 Where’s your hometown?

S3: 184 Tehran

T: 185 Tehran you hometown is Tehran

186 A! where is your hometown?

S2: 187 Teheran

T: 188 ok, Tehran

189 S! where is your home?

190 You are from the same hometown?

S: 191 Bangkok

T: 192 ok, Right

S3: 193 why do we need photographs?

T: 194 I don’t know

195 Don’t worry about that

196 Ok, err international drivers’ license? S?

S: 197 it’s [+ + +] we can use for driving in any place in the world

T: 198 ok, yeah

199 A driving license is like a passport to drive but it’s international

200 err H?

201 Tourist visa?

S3: 202 I think possibly we need it

T: 203 ok!

S3: 204 we can’t go into any country without it

T: 205 what is a visa then?

206 What- What do you mean?

207 Is- is it card?

S3: 208 I think no huh

T: 209 huh =

S3: 210 [+ + +]

S: 211 there is a card! Huh
SS: 234 = if you have a British passport!
I think so
235 I am not an expert, you know?
S: 236 it’s easy to apply for visa if you apply English
T: 237 yeah, I think if you have a British passport I think it’s:
S: 238 [in many countries you don’t need visas if you are British
you have a British passport
T: 240 yeah I mean it’s changing now
241 this for example I have a European passport
242 anybody who the old British passport is now gone
243 these are like- do you know the old ones!
244 they are blue passports but now it’s a European passport
245 with European countries together you have a small red passport
246 so you don’t have a- I don’t have a British passport
247 I have a European passport
S: 248 it’s a [ + + ] lion
T: 249 yeah on the front of the passport
250 yeah I mean that’s- that’s the British passport
251 I think now we ganna have a movement toward the European integration
252 I think everybody [ + + ] a European passport
253 But I think when you have a European passport then it’s quite easy to get a visa to a lot of other countries
254 Ok! right! err what I am liking you to do I like you to work in pairs please
255 some of you have started to think about this
256 so again work in the same pairs
257 what I am liking you to do to look at the boxes underneath ok?
Err and to help organise things on the lists to the things that we just defined tourist visa umbrella
Put them into categories ok! number one it's necessary and obligatory
you can't enter the UK without this
two it's prohibited by law
three it's a good idea to bring this
or it's ok but not necessary ok?
Now I want you to do two things please
I'd like you to err with the person next to you I'd like you to decide which item goes in which category!
And I want you to tell me talking about why ok?
And then I want you to see if you could think of two or three extra items, that are not on the list
and I'd like you please to put them in a particular category
and then you're going to tell me why you would actually take or not take these items
So sort the items in the box into the categories and then add two or three of your own(.) ok?
See if you can think about why! and I'll ask you to report back
(pair work)
all of these are not prohibit!
These ones we have to think!
right, maybe you could think of something that's not in the list you mean these are not prohibited?
This is prohibited yeah
if non of these are prohibited may be you could think about extra
what do you think is prohibited
Please ask me as well!
(pair work continued)
hello
hello good morning!
you're going to be on tape today,
so you have to make sure you'll do a lot of talking
hope so
what I want you do I want you to go and work with S over there
and they're going to tell you what you need to do, ok!
So if you take that with you,
(fresh fruits)
yes number four huh
number four you don't have to take this,
so it is not necessary ok,
say goodbye to your fresh fruit in the UK
ok that's fine
for English weather sunglasses
sunglasses!
yeah huh
which category you put sunglasses?
[number four]
ok, so which- which particular category you put it in?
[number four]
number four ok,
to bring them is not necessary you have any sunglasses here?
yes
do you use them?
S: 309 no
T: 310 never?
S: 311 once! or two times
T: 312 once or twice
313 It’s only in June may be [+ +]
S: 314 the last two months or three months just once
T: 315 so animals, you can’t-
316 you must not bring animals into the UK!
S: 317 yes some [+ +]
T: 318 ok
S: 319 leave them for six months
T: 320 yeah you quarantine,
321 what we call quarantine yeah
322 you must leave the animals there in case they have a disease
323 rabies it’s a horrible disease
S: 324 [+ +]
T: 325 Thai food! huh
SS: 326 huh
T: 327 ok, so you don’t have to!
328 You don’t have to bring Thai food
329 but may be it’s ok if you bring
S: 330 book
T: 331 ah books right
332 You mean books about the UK!
333 Do you think that’s obligatory?
S: 334 err
T: 335 do you think it’s necessary or do you think it’s a good idea?
S: 336 I think it’s necessary
337 if your English is not well you can buy in Thailand stories about UK
T: 338 ok! Yeah so where would you put them?
339 in here?
340 so it’s ok to bring it but not necessary
S: 341 just some- some people
T: 342 right ok!
S: 343 if your English is very good you can come here and buy some books from here
T: 344 right ok!
S: 345 if your English is not well you can buy in Thailand
T: 346 ok B can you think of anything?
347 something that’s either necessary and obligatory or prohibited?
348 or a good idea to bring or ok but not necessary?
349 Can you think of anything different that is not in the box that you would:
S: 350 [dictionary
T: 351 dictionary!
S: 352 yeah
T: 353 necessary or not?
S: 354 yeah
T: 355 huh ok
356 Why is it necessary?
S: 357 because I’m Thai
358 I speak Thai my first language
359 English language is second language so I don’t know every word what I mean
T: 360 ok, so which- which category would you put it in?
361 would you say it’s necessary?
362 Would you say isn’t necessary but it’s ok,
would you say it’s a good idea
or would you say it’s!

[it’s not

ok, so you put it in it’s ok but
not necessary

um

[+] you must(,) apply for
some(,) work permit

are you applying for a work
permit?

huh

huh ok, right you MUST apply

[if you
stay a long time about six
months you cannot(,) choose
what you want [+]]

so you mean you get a tourist
visa first and then you apply for
a work permit here

yeah

what we call deal with some
hotel or some place to live for a
while?

um:

[what do you call it?

you mean if you stay in a hotel
for a while?

yes but you make a contact to-
to let [+] of booking!

yeah make a reservation

[may be you
have-
if you haven’t(,) make not
contact and you walk in
may be(,) you have to live
underground after night because
no room for you

ok well you have to make a
reservation aren’t you?

[yes

that’s why they call it to make a
reservation at a hotel to stay for!

[yeah for: whatever!

I don’t know for a number of
weeks or a number of months

that we talk about tourist
situation

well yeah, yes it’s close to the
tourists’ yeah

Yeah! for a short vacation short
holiday

So do you think that’s necessary
or::

[you mean a call?

huh huh huh

if you can’t find a room you can
go to hotel carton

ok

do you know hotel carton?

what?

ok, is it

is it obligatory?

what obligatory mean?

it means you must do it by law

yeah ok

So is it obligatory to make a
reservation at a hotel?

no! ok, but it’s perhaps
necessary for

err may be it’s a good idea ok!

If it’s not then you will have to
be sitting in streets or something
I'm going to give a few minutes err make sure that you've got some reasons for why you put the things in the little boxes make sure you've got one or two extra items (pair work)

S: I've got credit card
T: you've got a credit card ok you've got a credit card ok that's not a problem at all ok you've got a credit card so ok no problem buy some tapes and CDs ok what about a watch?

S: you've got a watch!
T: [+ + +]

S: it's a good idea
T: so you put it in box: right so you should take a watch with you

S: yeah

S: huh
T: or you could ask people all the time, may be after a while I think you would be a little bit too [+ + +] after a while

S: yeah because people ask me all time
T: they ask you what do got- you've got the face sometimes people ask a lot about what time is it I think you've got a positive kind face people think ah I will ask this man,

he looks like he knows what time is it Right ok, good to ask err to begin with- right well I'm gonna ask A and H ok! I'm going to look at number one Box number one can you tell us which things you would put in box number one and why ok!

S: passport
T: ok a passport
S: visa(.) and a return airline ticket is very important
T: huh
S: a return airline ticket
T: and a return airline ticket ok do you think that- did you put money in the:

S: err
T: [in the box]
S: [many items you need but a visa card or credit card item three
T: ok why did you put- is a visa card more important more necessary than money?

S: yeah visa and because some people it hasn't credit card just have money when travelling abroad
T: ok why do you think a visa card is more important when you travel abroad than money?
461 Is it more convenient?
462 What do you think H?
S:
463 because we can't go to any country because
S4:
464 [because sometimes if you went to some parts lots of people you may: about to: loss your money your cash
T:
466 ok So if you carry cash you can lose it
S:
467 yeah is that good enough? visa
T:
468 [very good yeah 469 I like- that's a good reason
S4:
470 thank you
T:
471 ok! that's an excellent reason
472 yeah may be it's safer
473 but what happens if you lose your visa card?
S:
474 err
T:
475 [huh huh
S4:
476 we can phone
T:
477 ok you phone
478 Phone where?
S:
479 phone a friend
T:
480 phone a friend huh
SS:
481 huh huh
S3:
482 I think traveller check is better
T:
483 ok Travellers checks
484 Do you think- which box would you put travellers' checks in?
485 necess- the first box?
S4:
486 so can I-
S2:
487 [it's like money
T:
488 right travellers' check
S4:
489 can I ask about if a tourist loss something err tourist police?
T:
490 tourist police!
S:
491 yeah we do not have anyone
T:
492 no they don't have tourist police
493 I think you need to go if you lose something
494 err what do you need to do if you lose something for example?
S4:
495 even you cannot telephone you have to find police first because nobody gonna give you money to phone to [+ ++] that your card you lose your card!
497 No! no way!
T:
498 I think what you should do is if you lose something
499 I think that you should phone the police or you should go to the nearest police station
S4:
500 yes
T:
501 ok?
S4:
502 exactly
T:
503 and then you should tell them that you've lost your money
504 and then err they will help you or they should help you
S:
505 they cannot [+ +] if you lose(.) your card
506 if you go to police they just look [+ + ]
507 they cannot do they can do nothing
T:
508 well they can listen and they can record and they can give you advice about what you should do, ok!
S4:
509 may be
T:
510 [may be!
you can telephone a police station yeah?
T: yeah ok good!
That's good, ok,
what about S's group?
what about err is there anything that you put in box number two it is prohibited by law
you must not take this into the UK
is there anything in the box that you would put in that category?
in the box first
Nothing in the box
so again
sorry! what did you say?
grugs
T: grugs?
S: drugs
I don't know the meaning of disease
M said to me this
disease!
[translate in Thai
ok, let's do this in English ok, explain to s what disease is?
disease is err huh
make you sick
Yes?
something that suffer
[can you give us an example of a disease?
something [+ + +]
well yeah a problem with your body,
[heart problem
yeah for example heart disease
physical problems
yeah physical problems err:
disable is not disease
a disabled is different isn't it?
Err disease for example measles or chicken pox slow pox err disease for dogs is Rabies ok!
Which is why you need to put animals in quarantine
it means when you are sick you can [+ +] to somebody else
no no, no disease is when you are sick
when your are ill and you have a serious problem with your body and the way your body works
sometimes you can get disease
sometimes yes sometimes no yeah!
Diseases are sometimes contagious which means that other people can catch your disease
yes I know but a name the- in the UK they are not allowed some people are sick and they can somebody else can get can get from them
right yeah
some cases like malaria or something
yeah
and come to England you cannot enter
yeah ok
If you've got- this is the adjective if you've got a contagious disease
a disease that is dangerous to other people
for example in animals the disease rabies err can spread very quickly very easily it is a contagious disease this is the problem ok? so(,) yeah huh you must not take it into the UK I mean a contagious disease it is not a good idea you’re not allowed to get in if you’ve got it right ok, you’re not allowed to get in it’s prohibited when we came in the first immigrant they want test us no- yes they test me they test you! yeah they test for TB TB tuberculosis yeah and after that I can two months later the doctor came to see me again and test ok! ok! [because I’m working maybe because I’m working in an: you’re working with food as well aren’t you! So I mean working in a: yeah so Tuberculosis is a good example isn’t it? So you must not enter the UK with a contagious disease dangerous disease like tuberculosis ok so we’ve got drugs disease anything else S?

animal animals animals yeah(,) err animals are prohibited by law what do you do if you bring an animal into the UK? What can you do? we have to take them to the pets the name of the place I don’t know huh they control and they get the certificate yeah [writes on the board do you know what this is! Quarantine is you have to put your animal into what they call quarantine you take it to a place ok! You have a dog they take it to a place and they check the dog and may check the dog for disease it’s not abattoir no huh the abattoir no the abattoir- what is an abattoir? What happens in an abattoir? what happens to the animals? killed yeah the animals are killed in abattoirs is not abattoir ok! I know it’s foot and mouth disease that is not huh lots of animals unfortunately recently have gone to abattoirs but quarantine is where they are kept and tested and then released if they are(,) if they
S: present no danger to the community

T: 613 what about medicine?

S: 614 err drugs!
615 You mean bringing medicine into the UK?

T: 616 [yeah some kind of medicine

S: 617 err I don't know
618 what do you think?
619 Is this prohibited is it prohibited to bring medicine into the UK?

T: 620 they warn me about medicine some,

S: 621 [did they say that you must not bring it in?

SS: 622 [+ + +]

S4: 623 huh two young man! huh
624 what did you say?

S2: 625 some medicines from Thailand is better from England
626 because in England the medicine is not strong enough!

T: 627 ok! so you bring in strong medicine then!

S2: 628 yes but they do not allow some medicine like when you get sick then you go to see the doctor, in here the doctor must write something to buy

T: 629 [a prescription

S2: 630 yes

T: 631 I see right

S: 632 medicine for disease are allowed and not allowed in some countries like in Thailand now they do not allow decongestant you know

S4: 635 [for hey hey

T: 636 [hey fever

S2: 637 it's a kind of

S: 638 antihistamine

T: 639 decongestant antihistamine
640 you are not allowed!
641 I think it depends on the medicine on the drugs I think that
642 they would check I think that it is prohibited to bring because medicine is a drug
643 I mean it is prohibited to bring certain medicines certain drugs into the United Kingdom

S: 644 yeah in Thailand some kind of Aspirin we don't allow to use but in here I see a lot window supermarkets Aspirin

T: 645 [paraacetamol]

S2: 646 ok so you can bring Aspirin

T: 647 [we don't use Aspirin we use paracetamol

S2: 648 paracetamol yeah
649 the [+ + +] is the same isn't it?
650 Strong aspirin paracetamol isn't it!

S2: 651 [+ + +] some products like tape CDs are not allowed

T: 652 [right

S2: 653 asking in customs

T: 654 customs!

S2: 655 yeah

T: 656 ok! What was the product again?
657 what was the name again?

S2: 658 fake fake

T: 659 err

S: 660 it is not a copyright
T: 661 oh right fake 662 you mean if you bring fake you mean CDs or tapes or (. ) things that are not genuine
S2: 663 yes
T: 664 things that somebody has copied
S2: 665 yeah
T: 666 yeah I think goods things that are: not genuine that somebody has manufactured and not being honest
S2: 667 [+ + +]
T: 668 they call it counterfeit actually counterfeit [write on the board] 669 it's a very good word it's actually used as an adjective and it means that yeah don't worry! 671 What it means is what you just said 672 it means that if you bring in something and you say look this is made in: and this does this and does that and it's not and you're trying to sell it and saying this is a genuine product and you are selling something else that is not the genuine product for the same price as a genuine product you're breaking the law 674 so I think that you must not bring in counterfeit products which I think what you just said
S: 675 computers
T: 676 right computers 677 specially computer goods computer programming 678 there are counterfeit laws 679 you must not do certain things and the people do huh 680 everybody does but by law you must not 681 you look worried
S4: 682 can you explain laptop how is big? 683 laptop computer?
S2: 684 depends on the
S4: 685 [how big is it?]
T: 686 how big?
S: 687 Mitsubishi is of this size
T: 688 about that size yes 689 have you seen laptop computer? 690 You must have seen laptop computers yeah!
S4: 691 yeah yeah
T: 692 ok!
S2: 693 the one thing is most important is I don't know what we call like gun or bomb
T: 694 weapons
S: 695 weapon!
T: 696 yeah so you must not bring guns knives ok!
S: 697 knives are not allowed?
T: 698 knife is not ok 699 do you know what sort of a knife is! 700 (mime the action) you know what sort of a knife is! 701 if you click and the blade comes (clicking)
S: 702 huh
S: 703 you are stabbing huh
T: 704 no I'm not stabbing huh 705 this type of knife you must not bring in to the UK 706 it's called a flick knife and if I have if this the knife( ) ok!
707 But this is not sharp this is not the sharp bit as a knife and I go press the button and (clicking) and the sharp knife comes out
S4: [automatically
T: automatically
709 this is a flick knife
710 now you must not bring flick
knives into the UK
711 they are prohibited ok!
712 they are prohibited by law err
S4: 714 [sorry,
T: 715 [don't be sorry I'll talk bout
S4: 716 [Thai language huh
T: 717 do you know what I mean by
718 flick knife?
719 (clicking) the blade of the knife
720 the short bit of the knife
721 automatically comes out
S4: 719 [yeah I know exactly
T: 720 so you must not bring these in
721 so you must not bring weapons
in
S4: 722 and must bring with me all the
time
T: 723 you carry a flick knife?
S4: 724 huh yes
T: 725 I think you are very dangerous
S4: 726 huh
T: 727 no!
S4: 728 I think I think maybe I I,
729 [I carry it
to protect myself not for steal
something from you or from
anyone
T: 730 yeah I don't have any money on
me,
731 I have a little bit of money so
S4: [no I don't want money
732 I want something! [+ +]
T: 733 [+]?
S2: 734 what do you want?
S4: 735 something from your brain
T: 736 something from my bank!
S4: 738 your brain
T: 739 brain
740 what do you want from my
brain
S2: 741 knowledge
T: 742 knowledge! ok
743 So you must not bring weapons
in
744 ok then I want to ask H for
number three
745 what have you got for number
three which iS:
S3: 746 [international drivers' license
747 books about the UK
748 map of the UK and sun cream
S4: 749 in the UK! Sun cream!
SS: 750 huh
T: 751 so err ok!
752 What do you think about that?
753 You should bring sun cream
into the UK,
754 it's a good idea to bring this
755 Is it a good idea?
S2: 756 [yes because it's very dangerous
757 in this country
T: 757 oh! because?
S2: 758 [+] broken the:(.) sky
759 [ozone layer I think
S4: 760 ozone layer
SS:
you should know this ozone layer

it is broken and

[skin cancer]

yes the skin cancer

ok so you should use sun cream

is it obligatory?

no! I

(required by law huh

huh

huh it’s a good idea to bring it

ok it’s a good idea

what other things?

An umbrella!

umbrella! Yes

so you should bring an umbrella

it’s not raining today?

because we can’t huh

[not raining today but often

often raining!

um no today but maybe later

right

you cannot trust to the weather and news

huh

sometimes they say sun shine and sunny and then

[so you should bring an umbrella!

yes

a map of the UK did you say!

S: yes

T: why would you bring a map of the UK

why would you ask her to bring a map of the UK?

because she might be lost [+] find our ways

ok like the information

[yes

that K was talking about at the beginning ok

S! is there anything that you think is ok to bring but not really very necessary?

about women they must bring something or make-up

huh huh ok!

every every women when they go to anywhere they take make-up

I don’t know what [++]

do you bring a map of the UK?

they must bring!

yes they must bring

is it obligatory?

something forbidden huh

eye to boots and they make up early morning and they go to work huh

oh free make up in boots yeah

so you think it’s ok, but it’s not necessary yeah!

about woman is number three

something that women should do yeah!

yeah

so it’s a good idea, ok!

296
Which box would put make-up in H?

S3: sorry?

T: make-up which box would you put it in?

S3: I think number four

T: number four

S4: um ok but not necessary

T: ok then

S4: You put it in the last category!

S4: um

SS: huh

T: right ok! does anybody have any other items?

S2: that’s good

T: What I’d like you to do ok! err iS: I am gonna ask you to work with a partner

S2: one group of three and one group of two

T: I’m gonna ask you actually to go and work with somebody different ok?

S2: That’s all right!

T: Err and what I like you to do ok!

T: I’m gonna ask you to write two sentences ok!

T: And if you look at step four ok! I’m going to ask to choose an item from the box or an item that you have thought about ok?

T: It doesn’t matter

T: choose two items write two sentences about these items ok!

T: So for example let me give you an example right?

Err ... when you go abroad you must take a passport with you because it is required by law to enter the country

Full stop ok?

So you are actually thinking about the box or the category you’re thinking about the item and I want you to write a sentence about the item and want you to explain in that sentence why! ok?

So let me give an example here

I’ll write it down on the board ...

you must take a British passport because it is required by law Ok?

So I want you to write two sentences

choose two items err in the sentence you say you must take this you should take this you don’t have to take this and the second part of the sentence you must explain why?

why! it’s not necessary but a good idea

why it’s obligatory ok!

Why err it is prohibited by law

what does this mean belong in?

um?

belong

all right ok

It says write sentences about in each box explaining why you think they belong, ok!

Why do you think that that item Thai food fits into this box goes into

It’s connected with() this box,

why have you put it in this box ok?

belong

yeah yeah that’s it, ok!

so can you change your groups go and sit next to somebody

and in one group of three ok! I want you to write two sentences
together as a pair or as a three
ok!
862 Is anybody ok with what you have to do?

SS:
863 yes
T:
864 yeah, ok, go!
(group work)
S2:
865 counterfeit is original or:
T:
866 no this is not original product
867 this is a fake
S2:
868 [+++]
T:
869 ah genuine product
870 genuine is G E N U I N E
871 genuine is the original and the opposite is fake or counterfeit right
872 can you try make your sentences as very accurate
873 try and use: make accurate sentences
S1:
874 umbrella it is not necessary for travelling
875 what is very important [+++]
T:
876 ok so umbrella
877 which category you use?
S:
878 number three for travelling to UK,
T:
879 [ok so:
S1:
880 but not for travelling in [++]
T:
881 which word would you use to describe right ok, so- if it’s a good idea to do something which word do you use?
S1:
883 should
T:
884 should ok,
885 you should take an umbrella good
886 A! do you want to write your sentence on the board please the first one? (The student writes his sentence on the board.)
T:
887 h! do you want to write one of your sentences on the board please (writes on the board)
T:
888 ok, Now what I want you to do is just have a look
889 err we ganna take a break in a minute or two
890 but I want you to have a look at these sentences ok!
891 British weather!
S4:
892 sorry very bad writing huh
T:
893 that’s all right that’s ok!
894 It’s bigger than Ali’s writing here
895 Ok right good
896 Now let’s look at these sentences err
897 ok, A! do you want to read this sentences?
S1:
898 when somebody wants to travel abroad must take it because it is required by law
T:
899 ok, so this a return airline ticket
900 can you see any mistakes in this sentence?
901 when somebody?
S4:
902 travel
T:
903 right, ok
904 When somebody want to travel!!
S1:
905 yes
T:
906 third person isn’t it?
907 right ok This is required by law ok
908 Anything that is required by law
909 we are talking about must
910 it’s obligatory
911 If we are thinking about accuracy I can think of who!
912 When somebody wants to travel abroad must
need a subject they he or she must take it because it is required by law and the spelling here abroad! Aboard is aboard ship ok! But don’t worry because- what you’ve done if you used this sub- what do we call this type of verb?

modal

We’ve been using a lot of those today and I do you want to read your sentence at the bottom please?

we should take an umbrella because we can’t trust the British weather ok, which modal verb did you use there? which modal verb? in this sentence, which is err [should sh]ould ok When do we use should as a modal verb? When do we use it?

recommend

yeah a recommendation Is it obligatory? is it compulsory?

no

no, ok! If you look at this one it says it’s a good idea ok? It’s not obligatory must is obligatory, ok? So that’s a nice sentence And it’s quite true actually

what about trust to?

yeah this is ok
Err what I’d like you to do it’s ok, we ganna take a break for about five minutes or so

I’ll make it about 23 minutes past so take a break to half past

Now don’t forget if you want a coffee or anything it’s up there

What I’d like to do if you want to stay here if you are staying there you could look at this table have you got the err what we’ve got here is a table with some grammatical information about modal verbs

about when you use don’t have to,

when you use must and must not,

so if you are not taking a break outside of the room and you want to look at this table, just have a look at the table look at the information ok (Break)

we’ve been using modal verbs basically in our discussion about what is necessary what is not necessary but ok, ok!

And what you can and can’t do what you are and you aren’t allowed to do ok?

Now(.) just looking at the table here you’ve got must have got and have to err must not and can not can should and don’t have ok?

Now we’ve been using modal verbs all I want to ask you is is there anything in the table that you would like me to explain further

That you don’t understand err so just have a look at the table and then I want to ask me any question that you need to about what’s in the table

ok so!

are you ok with the table? Do you understand everything?

yeah with the table ok fine! Huh
So you say yesterday I had to visit the police station.

Yesterday I had to stop work at 25 past three.

So you can’t say musted.

d there is no past tense form of must.

so if you remember must and have to are:

the same meaning but the grammar is slightly different.

the past tense of must is had to.

That’s a good point.

well done you remembered.

Ok right good question.

Any other question about the table?

ok, what’s the opposite of can?

S4: cannot.

T: yeah you cannot or can’t yeah.

SS: shouldn’t.

T: shouldn’t err yeah negative advice.

you shouldn’t take.

well you shouldn’t take sun cream.

it is not necessary.

Is everybody ok with that?

No other questions?

S: no.

T: right ok.

Use that as a reference sheet.

Talking about necessity, prohibition and also permission ok S!

S: yes.

T: ok, the final activity that I want you to do ok!

And I want you to do this in groups.

so you can stay in the groups that you are in two three.

How many people can drive?
S4:
1080 yes
T:
1081 right ok!: what I want you to do is in your groups
1082 if you look at exercise two ok?
1083 All I want you to do is to work with your partner or partners
1084 and I’d like you to look at the bullet points
1085 you know what bullet points are?
1086 Yeah [miming the sound of rifle ok?]
1087 And I want you to decide which of the bullet points are necessary
1088 important words err if you want to get a drivers’ license ok?
1089 In your country right
1090 So let me change the groups
1091 so yeah can you two work together and you two work together
1092 will you three can work together
1093 So we’ve got a nice split between the different countries here ok?
1094 decide which of these are necessary and obligatory in your country to get a driving license
1095 Ok! you should have an extra little sheet
1096 With three bullet points on the back
1097 have you got that?
   (group work)
S2:
1098 high school diploma huh
T:
1099 high school diploma
1100 I think this is American: isn’t it?
1101 This American style language
S5:
1102 US? here vocational?
T:
1103 yeah we have diplomas here
1104 but because it says high school diploma high school is American
1105 so it’s first American language
S5:
1106 ID?
T:
1107 what’s ID mean?
so it is obligatory for you to have an army certificate to get a driving license

oh that's, let's think about this then

Err first of all K A and H which ones are necessary and obligatory

and maybe if there is something that is not there that is necessary and obligatory you can tell us, do you want? A!

know how to drive obligatory

ok

and practice before the test

ok err a good idea or!

a good idea

right, ok

practice before

yeah I think you should practice before shouldn't you?

yeah

ok good

take an eye test is obligatory

right, so the eye test is obligatory

and taking the written test is obligatory

ok, so there is a theory test, ok

and a medical examination is a good idea

right, so it's not obligatory it's not required by law

not necessary

but it's a good idea

so perhaps you should have a medical test ok?

and have a passport for a birth certificate is obligatory

right obligatory

Proof of identification ID

and pass the driving test

right ok

pass the driving test

have a high school diploma I think is not necessary

right so you don't have to have particular qualifications

a good idea huh

ok

own a car() not necessary

right not necessary to own a car

a good idea

a good idea only a good idea

Ok, and what about an international drivers' license is that obligatory?

a good idea!

no

no!

no obligatory

not obligatory

no

ok, and I think there is one more thing, is it obligatory?

is obligatory for boys

[for boys ok

tell us what-
every boy must err must err
military( ) army for two years
after passing the two years he can [++] to the military and
and get the driving test
And get married err get a job
is very important
T:

right

get a passport
T:

right

and somebody like me he can get a army certificate
without go to army,
T:

right

as a som- because some people
err only(.) only son like me
I’m the only son for my parent and
S4:

[they don’t need to
S1:

yeah
T:

right so if you are the only child you don’t need to do that
S1:

no this is a new law about three or four years
[++] and can get can get an army certificate without go to the army
T:

right
S4:

sorry if their fathers after the-
over the sixteen years they don’t need to go to the army
S1:

and some people with the father up to sixty years old
T:

ok, so it’s obligatory to have an
army certificate
S4:

yes it is obligatory
T:

right, ok
S1:

very important for boy huh
S5: 1232   ah
T:  
1233   think about it
1234   investigate it
1235   Ok, so you hav- so it is obligatory to have a test for colour blindness ok!
1236   any other differences?
S2: 1237   others are the same
1238   just we don’t have to pass military
S5: 1239   [right
T:  
1240   right, so you don’t need a military!
S5: 1241   [no
T:  
1242   certificate
S2: 1243   just an ID card
T:  
1244   just an ID card
1245   So you don’t have to have a passport!
S5: 1246   no
T:  
1247   right you can have an- you just need your ID card
S5: 1248   passport, when we go abroad
T:  
1249   just abroad yeah?
S5: 1250   yeah
T:  
1251   ok
S5: 1252   just an ID card
T:  
1253   right
S1: 1254   another difference between UK and Iran
1255   in UK must be 17 years old,
T:  
1256   [17 years to get provisional license
S1: 1257   yeah but in Iran 18 years old
T:  
1258   ok, so you must be older
S1: 1259   yeah 18 years old,
T:  
1260   [yeah
S1: 1261   finish 17 and 18 finish 18 and
T:  
1262   [right
S1: 1263   get a certificate
T:  
1264   yeah do you know about do you know what you do if you have to get a driving license in the UK?
1265   Do you know anything about this?
1266   You can err start to drive at 17
1267   you get a provisional license
S4: 1268   yeah
T:  
1269   do you know anything else about how to get a license?
1270   What you need to do?
1271   In the UK?
S2: 1272   to to somebody who have three years
S4: 1273   [ah British,
S2: 1274   [British license
S4: 1275   [you have to be British
S2: 1276   after three years
T:  
1277   ok, so- you mean you have to be a British citizen!
S2: 1278   no we have to learn for
1279   whoever who can that is three years with license
T:  
1280   ok, all right, I see your teacher right, learning from a professional
S2: 1281   [somebody support you, in UK
1282   somebody support you for getting certificate
1283 get a driving license

T: 1284 right ok, so somebody
S2: 1285 [like a teacher like you doctor or teacher
T: 1286 right
S2: 1287 yeah and confirm your signature but in Iran no
T: 1288 [it's not necessary
S2: 1289 no not necessary
T: 1290 ok
S2: 1291 if you've got points [+ + +] in your license
T: 1292 oh you mean when you passed your driving test if you do something wrong you get points on your license
1293 Hello! Somebody is looking through the window never mind
1294 Do you mean after you passed your driving test if you do something wrong the police put-
S2: 1295 [record
T: 1296 yeah, you have a driving record and they put points
1297 so if you go through if you don’t stop at a red light, they give you six points on your license,
1298 and you get up to,
S: 1299 [+ + +] when you have done something wrong you can’t drive
T: 1300 yeah if you get a certain number of points then you lose your license for the time and you have to reapply for your license
1301 Is that true in(...) Thailand?
1302 If you drive badly do you get points?
S5: 1303 yeah you get a written card and you have to pay
T: 1304 oh you have to pay a fine ok right
S4: 1305 if you drive for a year I think goodly we:
T: 1306 [well
S4: 1307 yes well I’m sorry huh
1308 we don’t need(...) we don’t need extra money for tax to pay extra money
T: 1309 oh ok right
1310 You get tax reduction
S4: 1311 yes tax
T: 1312 [if you drive well yeah
S4: 1313 [for a year tax reduction
T: 1314 what a good idea
SS: 1315 yeah
T: 1316 we don’t have that in the UK
S5: 1317 in our country if you pay insurance for car yeah
1318 but and you have contract about 2 years or 4 year you never have accident but you claim in the full money
T: 1319 [no claim bonus yeah
S5: 1320 and you have the tax interest on the top
1321 not like in England your country every year you pay and money gone
1322 just discount for five percent every car every year and then gone even when they never have accident
T: 1323 ok, yeah, you do get a non claims bonus
1324 I think it's the same
1325 so if you are a good driver you do get,
S5:
1326 [bonus five percent
T: 1327 yeah ok,
S5: 1328 you pay 400 you get back forty
S2: 1329 in Thailand we don’t have get
the money back
T: 1330 you don’t get money back!
S5: 1331 (shifts to Thai)
T: 1332 come on in English it’s better
for you
1333 if I learn you learn more I think
1334 what you are saying is that it’s
better in Thailand for getting
money for being a good driver
S5: 1335 yes err
T: 1336 [but you don’t agree
S5: 1337 get money back yeah in some
bank and
T: 1338 [right
S5: 1339 they do that now they have been
doing that from now many
people have quite new
T: 1340 ok it’s a new law?
S5: 1341 not a new law
1342 quite new business
T: 1343 right, Good just before we finish
I want to say one final thing
about must
1344 must is often used for obligation
1345 but when you feel a personal
obligation so for example if my
grandma is in hospital and she is
ill and I haven’t been to see her
for a long time, ok!
1346 I can say to you I must do this
1347 it doesn’t mean it’s required by
law
1348 it mean I feel a sense of
personal obligation to do this
1349 and this is not on the sheet but
these are actually the things that
I think you need to be aware of
1350 so when you’re talking about
your personal feeling about
obligation
1351 so it’s not the law ok!
1352 it’s not obligatory for me and
visit my grandma but I feel that
I must
1353 that is obligatory for me
because I like my grandma and
she is not very well ok!
1354 so this is quite a common use of
must when you feel an
obligation personally to
something
S4: 1355 I must practice English
T: 1356 right yeah I must practice my
English
1357 if I don’t practice my English I
won’t improve
1358 this not the law
1359 it’s your sense of something that
you feel obliged to do
S5: 1360 thank you!
T: 1361 ok, you’re welcome
1362 So there are a few differences
between must and have to ok?
S: 1363 yeah
S4: 1364 we can say to somebody you
have to do something?
T: 1365 yeah, I mean have to is often
more general obligation
1366 yeah if you think that they
should do it on a personal level
I would say
S4: 1367 [no sorry I mean to advise
somebody we can say you have
to do something
T: 1368 no
1369 which modal verb do you use if
you advise somebody?
Which verb?

S2: should

T: you should yeah?
1373 I think that you should put a coat on because it's cold outside
1374 this is advice
1375 it's not obligation,

S4: polite huh

T: yeah ok!
1378 so there are some important differences as well
1379 but the general meaning is the same
1380 Ok right we'll finish up now
1381 I won't be teaching next year but have enjoyed teaching the class ok!
1382 and I wish you all the best to your English in the future
T2 (3rd Session)

T: right well I’ll start by asking you to think about in your country anything that you have to do anything that you must do anything that you are obliged to do in your daily life for example well do you have to go to school! Do you have to carry an identity card! What kinds of things like that things that are necessary for you to do can you give me some examples?

S: for one particular or for all the people of the country?

T: generally or individually if it is individually then obviously it’s your family I suppose isn’t it? Yes I don’t mind I was thinking more generally but it doesn’t matter any examples would be-

S: [I have to go to the work every morning]

T: I have to go to work every morning yes! Why do you have to go to work every morning?

S: in order to earn money

T: huh but it is possible not to work in your country!

S: well yeah

T: yes

S: [+ + +]

T: yes

S: huh

S: but you [+ + +]

T: but what?

S: [+] it’s not I mean you- you live[you live( )yes right]

S: this rich

T: so you have- yes so you have to go to work in that sense you have to go to work every morning for all sorts of reasons all right Let me have another example thank you! What do you have to do in your country?

S: I run motorcycle [+ + +]

T: I have to carry my ID card and the driving license and I have to wear a helmet

S: Yes a helmet

T: we call it a helmet yes So if you drive!

S: a motorcycle

T: a motorcycle yes tell me again!

S: motorcycle

T: yes what do you have to do?

S: if I drive motorcycle I have to carry my ID card and err drive license

T: driving license

S: driving license

T: yeah

S: and err

T: [and( )] a hat

S: a hat
T: yes (.) we call it a safety helmet
(writes on the board)
like you see people wearing when
they are building
working on the building sight
so it is compulsory is it?
do you know the word compulsory?
No.
Right (writes on the board) you have
to do it
it is- is it a law?
S: yes a law
T: yes compulsory by law
so by law in Taiwan if you drive a
motorcycle ride a motorcycle you
must have your ID card
you must have driving license and
you must wear a safety helmet right
I think it is very similar in this
country
safety helmet or driving helmet is
required and certainly a license but
perhaps not the ID card
because we don’t have ID cards yet
in this country
but we are talking about it
we may have them soon, Good
Another example!
S: driving license is the most important thing
yeah driving license
T: you have to carry it with you!
S: yes although we have ID card but
when you have driving license it
could [+ + +] for both
T: oh a driving license can serve as an
S: [can serve as an ID as well
T: right I see
so you have to carry it with you!
S: yeah
T: when you are driving!
S: driving or for any other things
107 And!
S: 108 Libya from six
T: 109 and six in Libya yeah
110 we are different here
111 it’s on five
112 on five to 16 is necessary to go to school
113 you are obliged to go to school have to go to school ok?
114 think of something now that err is prohibited (writes on the board)
115 you know the word prohibited?
116 What does that mean?
S: 117 [++]
T: 118 if something prohibited
S: 119 not allowed
T: 120 not allowed
121 yes not allowed by law
S: 122 forbidden
T: 123 forbidden yes
124 by law yes or by your parents if you’re thinking of a family situation
125 prohibited it is not allowed
126 If there is a law then it’s illegal isn’t it?
127 Legal illegal
128 so give me some examples of things that are prohibited?
S: 129 drinking under 18
T: 130 drinking under 18 in!
S: 131 Korea
T: 132 yeah is prohibited
133 all right yes!
S: 134 kill someone
T: 135 huh murder huh yes
SS: 136 huh
T: 137 it is prohibited yes huh yes
138 any more examples?
S: 139 That’s generally I think throughout the countries the same with drinking
140 I think it’s 18 here as well
S: 141 in my country if you are under 18 you cannot go out after 12 o’clock in the evening
T: 142 right midnight right
S: 143 why?
S: 144 because you are [++]
145 I don’t know
146 whether if you go out you have to carry your ID card and the police will check
147 if you are under 18 you have to be caught and sent back to your home [++] your parents
T: 148 huh right that’s what we call a curfew (writes on the board)
149 a curfew means people in certain circumstances or in certain ages are not allowed to be out on the streets
S: 150 [they can go out with their parents
T: 151 oh right but not alone
152 Not by themselves
153 so a curfew for young people in Taiwan after midnight
154 that means they must not be out unless they are with their parents
155 They’re thinking of introducing that idea in this country
156 because we have a lot of problems with specially young people
157 sometimes younger than that
158 may be 13, 14 years old who live in poor areas
159 and don’t have anything to do and perhaps their parents are not terribly interested in what they are doing
160 and they cause a lot of trouble
161 they are breaking into houses or steal from shops or something like that
162 so the government is thinking that they will introduce a curfew
S: 163 living on the streets
T: 

311
hum?

S: they must live in the streets as the [+ + +]

T: oh yes well I don’t think he was quite sleepy and that is another reason for that yes

168 in order to prevent all these kinds of social trouble there will be a curfew for children

169 I think may be 13 14 17 that they should be at home after 9 o’clock

S: huh

T: nine nine yes

172 after nine o’clock in the evening or something like that bit that is not the law yet

174 but they are thinking of introducing it

175 Oh this is very interesting give me another example to move on to something [+ + +]

177 now for example the things which are prohibited

178 what’s prohibited in your part of the world?

S: in our country

T: yes

S: young couple only can have one child [+ + +]

182 they will fined or be fired

T: will be fined or?

S: [or fired

T: fired! Right

SS: fired

T: say it again!

S: one child()ha!

S: [+ + +] a new law about this

S: what is the new law?

S: one couple one child

S1: if your husband is the only child for his family and his wife also only child for her family they can have two children

S: what happens if they have three?

S: they three!

T: to pay a fine (writes on the board)

197 if you drive your car and do something wrong you may have to pay a fine

198 it’s a penalty

199 it’s a penalty

S: [in some other countries

190 if you have more children you have()
some money

T: [they will give you more money yes

Huh

SS: huh

T: yes!

S: but even you work for the government you may have a lot of money to give another you cannot

S: because of the number of population

206 I can understand

S: yeah

T: so at present you must not have more than one child

209 but you think there is a different regulation

S: a new several months

T: [right

S: ago

T: yes if each parent is a single child then those they
they can have more than one right
Can you explain why they have introduced that new law?
some scientists said at 2015 China will
the number of birth and the
[number of deaths]
number of death of people so the new law about the population
I see that’s interesting
yes I had to hear about that
I have heard some Chinese students here
saying they think it’s not a good idea only to be able- allow to have one child
because it puts a lot of pressure on that child
and the child doesn’t learn to share or to socialise very well
so they may not say this in china
but they say it here because-
it’s interesting
that’s going to change
yes because the balance of the population would be settled by then ok
well those were very interesting examples of things that are allowed or are not allowed
to things that are compulsory
things that are prohibited
I thought you would tell us about alcohol in your country
[yeah I was thinking about something yeah!]
yes
I think yeah people want it’s forbidden
yes ok
[forbidden forbidden]
[+] + [+]
but if you enjoying yourself and nobody err

T: [maybe perh-
S: 273 recognise huh
T: 274 perhaps the law is more liberal in one or two countries than it is in some of the others yeah
S: 275 yeah
T: 276 but it's a religious law
S: 277 more than
T: 278 [more than a a state law 279 so religious law 280 so perhaps it might not apply to people who are from of different religion
S: 281 [I think in other religions also but because it's
T: 282 [yes
S: 283 if they don't be then through education or something it become a law even in Christians
T: 284 yes
S: 285 it is not allowed
T: 286 right so a quite a few different things obviously that we discovered here about family size and alcohol and ID card
S: 287 [may I ask a question about China?
T: 288 yes
S: 289 is your government any law about homosexuals 290 because I hear someone told me if you you say you are homosexual in your country you will be fined
T: 291 in your country?
S: 292 no [ + + ]
T: 293 oh a company!
294 Right you will be fired
S: 295 yes
SS: 296 huh (for some time the student are talking and laughing)
S: 297 it's legal now
T: 298 it's legal now
S: 299 no! not legal it's err
T: 300 [illegal
S: 301 no, it's err
S: 302 [privacy
S: 303 not illness
T: 304 no, is there a law about it?
S: 305 yes there is the government said it's not err
306 look at- err I said ok not illness 307 it's not an illness 308 I think it's normal
T: 309 [normal
S: 310 normal people
T: 311 right
S: 312 yes err just a month ago there is a new law
T: 313 oh right!
S: 314 no [ + + ]
T: 315 change of law
S: 316 it's a year after that
T: 317 oh right right just when it came here
S: 318 it's good news for him
SS: 319 huh
S: 320 something [+ +] as the religion or,
T: 321 [yes
S: 322 may be there is no law
323 it is not law but there is punishment
I think
324 and there is no respect from the society at all
T: 325 oh right
S: 326 because we think that this is something against the nature of humanity
T: 327 right yes yes
S: 328 it’s not against the law or against humanity law
329 something very strange
T: 330 right yes well we had law about- against that until the 1960s
331 and then the law changed here
332 In 1967 I think it was
333 And then it was not illegal any more
334 it used to be illegal before that
335 and people would be fined or go to prison before that
336 but after 1967 the law changed and it’s therefore not illegal now
337 but again a lot of religious feel that it is not appropriate huh
338 but it’s there is no law against it any more
S: 339 I heard some married
340 homosexual married done in the church
T: 341 I don’t think so
342 they may have a ceremony
343 but it would not be the same as marriage
344 because marriage can only take place between two people who can have children
345 and that’s the marriage by law
346 you can have a legal arrangement if you want to
347 but you cannot have the same thing as a marriage
S: 348 [although in this country you agreed but the society look at these things that as
T: 349 [it’s divided yes yes
350 there is a divided opinion on that yes
S: 351 [+ +] is to allow homosexual couples to adopt children
T: 352 [children
S: 353 it is the: [+ +] in Spain now
S: 354 I don’t know this class would allows to discuss in this
T: 355 [we might have to finish this material and come back to this topic I think
356 otherwise the material will not
SS: 357 [huh huh huh
T: 358 but obviously that’s an interesting topic for discussion
359 There is a couple here two men who have adopted children from America,
360 it hasn’t been allowed for them to adopt children who are born here
361 but the American law must be different
362 and so they have adopted children from America
363 yes the law is changing isn’t it!
364 Quite a lot according to opinion
365 and perhaps changing in China err quite quickly for all sorts of reasons
366 not least is the fact that they’re going to have the Olympic Games in a three year time
367 and I think the government would want to be able to say this
368 we do this and we do this and seems to fit in with other countries yeah
369 Good ok
370 now I want you to imagine a different situation
I want you to imagine that there is somebody that you know in your home country
and they that person is preparing to come to this country
and that person wants to know what should he or she bring to this country
what is allowed
what is not allowed
what would you suggest that would be a good thing to bring and that kind of things
and again because your countries are quite different err you might think of different things
can you tell me the sort of things that you would say err that person should bring or must bring with him or her,
what are necessary in terms of the law?

S: 380 a passport
T: 381 a passport yes obviously
S: 382 [+ + +]
T: 383 coming from your country to this country
S: 384 ah to this country!
T: 385 yes
S: 386 an umbrella
T: 387 an umbrella huh
S: 388 huh
T: 389 compulsory?
S: 390 huh
S: 391 essential
T: 392 essential! Huh
S: 393 I came by one from the airport
T: 394 ok we would say that there is a law that says you have to bring a passport

err what would you say here?
S: 396 visa
T: 397 essential but not a law
S: 398 not a law yes
T: 399 sorry!
S: 400 a visa
T: 401 a visa yes
S: 402 valid visa
T: 403 valid visa yes
404 what other kinds of things might we recommend?
S: 405 a coat
T: 406 a coat
407 which which category come under?
S: 408 below that
T: 409 with this
S: 410 travellers' checks
T: 411 travellers' check yes
412 where would you put that?
S: 413 there is no law
414 but it's err there is money yeah is used
T: 415 do many people actually use travellers' checks these days?
416 Just explain what a travellers' check is?
S: 417 sorry?
T: 418 can you explain what it is!
S: 419 yeah
S: 420 everybody know?
T: 421 may be not just in case!
S: 422 err it's money but you: you can not use directly
you first have to change, in a bank and it is perfect because when you want to get a money you have to sign it; the cashier so if somebody err stole:

T: 427 [steal]

S: 428 steal your travellers’ checks this person err will not able to (.) to check for money and you can (.) err get again your traveller checkers

T: 430 [you can claim it back yeah]

S: 431 so it’s a perfect to protect you the err (.) from err this Perfect

T: 433 so you obtain your travellers’ checks in your own country!

S: 434 [yes]

T: 435 go to your own bank they know how much money you’ve got or you tell them and then they give you the checks you sign for them in your country do a specimen signature on the check and then you carry them here but what do we use today perhaps instead of travellers’ checks!

S: 442 credit cards!

T: 443 credit cards yes, so essential admit? Travellers’ checks or credit cards (writes on the board)

S: 446 both

T: 447 yes both so that you can use your credit card anywhere err provided you have money in the bank in one place huh 449 got money in the bank at home you can use your credit card anywhere yes?

S: 450 a friend called me 451 he brought a lot of money from Taiwan travellers’ checks so he had to sign [+ + +] for example for 40 or 50 pages

SS: 453 huh

T: 454 yes he had to yes 455 because they want to see your signature

S: 456 [+ + +]

T: 457 yes but it is a safe way of carrying money around and I have the same situation because I I sign Chinese Bank of English [+ + +] and I have a small amount about five pounds and ten pounds huh

T: 460 a lot of them yeah 461 the useful thing about travellers checks is that if there is a change in the level of the currency if the value of the currency changes it may change in your favour or it may change the other way and you may lose money and you can keep them for some time and wait until the level is err is in your favour right we talked about driving license before 465 we talked about driving license before 466 would you recommend! err

SS: 467 [international drivers’ license]

T: 468 international driving license essential! By law!

SS: 470 essential but not by law

T: 471 right I am sure you can think of a few more, as well

S: 472 no claim insurance
T: 473 oh right yes bring your-
474 if you have been driving at home
beforehand bring a record of your
car insurance in case you’re
qualified for no claim discount here
475 because insurance is very expensive
476 car insurance is very expensive here
477 so it would be a good thing to
recommend your friend yes
478 Well let’s of things now that are
prohibited
479 what you would not (writes on the
board)
S: 480 drugs
T: 481 drugs
S: 482 raw fish
SS: 483 raw fish huh
T: 484 what?
SS: 485 raw fish
T: 486 rubbish!
S: 487 raw fish
T: 488 raw fish huh
489 right is that [+ +] did you try?
S: 490 no no
T: 491 huh
S: 492 I mean, I [+ +] intend bring law
T: 493 [raw
S: 494 raw products
T: 495 raw products [writes on the board]
yes ok
496 that’s ok
497 raw products yes
498 unless they are in! sealed bags
499 you know vacumm packed sealed
500 then you can bring them in
501 but you cannot bring raw products
whether it’s fish or fruit
502 err you cannot bring them
503 it has to be sealed and packed in a
certain way
504 vacuum packed
505 and then there can be no transfer of
gerns
506 yes, anything else?
507 sometimes they give you a card on
the aeroplane
508 and with the list of things that you
must not bring into the country
509 can you remember any more things
on that card?
S: 510 plants
T: 511 plants! yes, ok
S: 512 animals
SS: 513 huh
S: 514 yes!
T: 515 yes! True yeah they have to go,
S: 516 [animal, you are not allowed to
bring them!]
S: 517 [+ +]
T: 518 err you can bring but you would
have to make arrangements
S: 519 [yeah
T: 520 beforehand for the animal to stay in
a special place for a period of time
so that it can be seen that this animal
does not have any disease
521 now what is that period of time
called?
522 do you know?
S: 523 quarantina
T: 524 quarantine yes
525 the same word in English as well
526 Quarantine (writes on the board)
527 if you bring an animal they will say
sorry we cannot allow this animal in
528 it must stay in a special place in a
[canals]
529 or in special wherever they want to
look after these things
A period of time for dog is six months, it's quite a long time, to make sure that the dogs do not bring any disease in the country but I think this law is changing because of the European law and I think it's now possible to take dogs between here and some countries in the European union or it is about to become possible to do that and I am not quite sure of the status at the moment but normally yes these things are banned anything else that is banned? suppose we could put here guns couldn't we! Fire arms, along with the bombs (writes on the board) anything else? no well there are more some suggestions on here so have a look at this sheet and the situation that I have just described for you in step one at the top of that page A friend of yours from your country of origin is planning a short vacation in the UK as he or she is not a British citizen she will have to deal with immigrations and custom when she enters the UK she doesn't have much room to pack a lot of things because she is planning to travel with just a bag pack a bag pack you know that! Here is some of things she is thinking of taking with her And there you have a list, of things some of them you have mentioned there is one thing here that is essential which we have not put here what's that one? in this list look for the one more essential thing, by law On the whole I would say essential?

essential legally req- sorry there is one legally required thing here
T: 588 that?
S: 589 yes
T: 590 hiking boots
591 hiking is when you go walking in the countryside
592 they are special boots
593 hiking boots for walking
S: 594 surf board?
T: 595 does anybody know what a surf board is?
S: 596 a sport on the sea and a board using a board
T: 597 you stand on a board and try to ride on the waves on the surf good
[individual work continues]
T: 598 I think you are noting an interesting err (.) spelling situation here
599 how is the word driving license spelt?
600 With the S why?
601 huh this is the UK spelling and this is the US spelling
602 we use this spelling here
603 in America they use that
604 We use this spelling only for the verbs and this spelling for the nouns
S: 605 and drivers’ and driving
T: 606 oh drivers’ license or driving license
607 we use driving license here yes
608 Driving license right
609 just check with your partner or somebody sitting next to you that you’ve got them all in the same boxes
610 or if you’ve got different things and decide why they are different!
611 just compare your lists when you’re finished (pair work)
T: 612 do you remember this is for a holiday
613 your friend is coming for a holiday not as UK as student
614 Yes It’s slightly different
T: 615 we had just an interesting point
616 that of course if we are within Europe
617 a European travelling form one European country to another then this column will be different
618 because err visas and on some of these are not required but generally it’s correct
619 Good and it says in step number three
620 here that if we can think of some more things
621 which we have already done in fact
622 you thought of some more things before
623 you can put these things into your boxes as well if there are any more
624 so you could add some to here
625 certainly add some to the box which says it is prohibited
626 And err any other things that we’d mentioned there
627 Right now a short time to do a little bit of writing
628 just together
629 it says at the bottom step four
630 write sentences about one or two item in each box explaining why you think they belong in that box
631 Right?
632 So you do sentence number one box
633 you do a sentence for number two box three box and number four box right?
S: 634 how about fresh fruit in England?
T: 635 err no I think to be processed
636 it is still law
637 it is the processed that is all right
S: 638 because I want to ask my mother
T: 639 oh right to bring
S: 640 
[fresh fruit
T: 641 yeah you could try and you know they may take it away from her
642 Ok get your sentences ready now (pair work continues)
T: 

643 have done your sentences would you like to tell me what you have done?

S: 644 you should bring credit card to pay to get money [++] whatever

T: 645 writes on the board yes?

S: 646 it is a good idea to bring umbrella because the weather is changeable

T: 647 [changeable

648 an umbrella

S: 649 an umbrella

T: 650 box number two?

651 Not yet box number one!

652 Who is ready? ok?

S: 653 you you have bring your surf board with you

T: 654 let put it other way round

655 a surf board a suit and what?

S: 656 [++]

T: 657 [++] to bring with you (end of side A)

S: 658 depends on the people I think

T: 659 [depends on the person yes

S: 660 yeah

T: 661 yes all right

S: 662 someone likes music [++]

663 they must bring the tapes and the CDs

T: 664 [yes

S: 665 and the err laptop computer for someone is

T: 666 [essential

S: 667 yes

T: 668 huh say you would find it hard to give advice about what is necessary and

S: 669 [yes

T: 670 yes what you would have to say (writes on the board)

671 if you really need your laptop or your music or: err then you should take it

672 That’s I think the sort of advice you would give in number four

673 because as you say it’s hard to know somebody might be coming here

674 because they want to do some surfing

675 so in that case they would really want to bring their surf board with them

676 yeah so you have to find a way of saying if you really need you really need it

677 or if you really feel you need your laptop computer then take it with you

678 You will have to decide

679 yes but it’s not necessary is it?

680 Really yes and that would apply to the music as well

681 Right sentence- box number one!

S: 682 passport and the tourist visa are essential

683 then [++] through the immigration and the customs

T: 684 yes ok are essential

685 yes did you write another one?

S: 686 no continue custom in order to enter this country

T: 687 that’s right

688 I’m just drawing your attention

689 so you can decide for yourself on that one

690 Don’t forget to bring it if you want to do something

691 it’s a good idea to bring it

692 you should bring a credit card
what else have we got now in number err!

number two

two

it is prohibited to carry fresh fruit into UK

ok that’s right it is prohibited yeah

because fresh fruit is easy to decay

yes it is not just as I think in case there are germs or viruses or bacteria or that kinds of things

usually it is not just a decay

it’s it’s decayed fruit

don’t worry about it yes huh

it’s prohibited to bring or to carry fresh fruit into UK for various reasons yes?

yes

ok did you have a prohibited one? Yeah!

the same one

fresh fruit!

How did you- what words did you use?

you cannot bring fresh fruit into the UK because it may have some germs

all right, ok again because it may have some disease

so there is another way of saying it

you cannot bring

it is prohibited to bring

we can say these things in different ways

so I’ve underlined a particular err part of the sentence which use this kind of language about what is prohibited

and what is not possible

and what is possible

if you turn over to the other side of this page
755 Meaning you can if you want to but you don’t have to bring a surf board it’s up to you.
756 you can decide.
758 surf board is too heavy to bring with you or you don’t have to. So remember that one.
760 if you didn’t know it before you don’t have to.
761 now can we make up some more sentences about the other things that we haven’t used in quite the same way here.
762 in the first box you must have a passport.
763 you have to have a passport.
764 you’ve got to have a passport.
765 give me that structure with another word.
766 what else do you have to have? you!
S: 767 have to have [++]
T: 768 no just think of the things that we, listed before, passport.
769 passport let me hear it in a sentence!
S: 770 you have to have a visa.
T: 771 [you have to have a visa yes]
772 you must have a visa right.
773 things that are not allowed we’ve mentioned fresh fruit.
774 you cannot bring fresh fruit or you must not bring raw fish.
775 I think the general principle there is you must not bring unprocessed food if you want a general category.
776 You must not bring unprocessed food.
777 Processed food is all right but not unprocessed food.
778 If you want to in the next one that’s F.
779 you can bring a surf board.
780 what else can you bring if you want to?
S: 781 you can bring a map of UK.
T: 782 you can bring of of the UK.
783 you can bring?
784 What were you arguing about here! 785 You bring your?
S: 786 [hiking boots]
T: 787 hiking boots if you want to.
788 you can bring your hiking boots.
789 you can bring your CDs and your music.
S: 790 you can bring an umbrella.
T: 791 you can bring an umbrella yes huh.
792 that’s perhaps better with the next one.
793 you should bring an umbrella because it’s perhaps more necessary than the surf board and the music.
S: 794 but you can buy one from the airport.
T: 795 and you can buy one here yes, yes. 796 Remember the last one.
797 you don’t have to bring.
798 you don’t have to bring if you were not familiar with that.
799 Ok, right, 800 and finally let’s go back to the idea of a driving license which did come up in the conversation earlier in the lesson.
801 we want to think about how we obtain a driving license in your country.
802 which of the following are necessary or obligatory.
803 you are obliged.
804 it is obligatory.
805 Which of the following are necessary and obligatory in your country.
806 can you discuss those again in the groups that you were in, tell each other what is necessary.
807 what is obligatory (pair work).
T: 809 all right are you! 810 Have you decided.
811 finished?
S: 812 yes.
T: 813 would you like to tell us now 814 what the situation is in your country?
815 we may not have for all of time 816 K! tell us about Korea!
We heard a lot about Korea today.

S: you have to have a high school diploma.

T: you do need?

S: yes

T: we don’t need

S: huh you don’t need a high school diploma.

T: to own a car is not necessary

S: you don’t need to own a car?

T: yes

S: the other things is the same as Korea.

T: the other things are all true in Korea yes!

S: yes

T: you need to know all the other things.

S: an international driving license is not necessary.

T: right it is not necessary what about the other things?

S: the other things is the same as Korea.

T: the other things are all true in Korea yes!

S: yes

T: you need to know all the other things.

S: an international driving license is not necessary.

T: right yes(.) not necessary to have a-

S: but you cannot have an international driving else until you’ve got your own license.

T: so the last three are not necessary what you are saying! I t’s not required in Korea right.

S: What about in Japan Y?

T: you have to pass the driving test!

S: no no the last three.

T: No no we’re talking about these over here huh.

S: Y! what is the situation in Japan?

T: you don’t have to pass a medical examination.

S: you don’t need to take a medical examination.

T: not necessarily right.

S: you don’t need a passport but [+] [+]

T: ID?

S: ID err to (. ) to err

T: [to what?

S: to confirm your address.

T: oh right to confirm your address.

S: right I see and your identity.

T: [card

S: birth certificate.

T: do you need a birth-

S: what certificate?

T: passport or a birth certificate.

S: Do you need

T: [I forgot to watch

S: forgot!

T: what kind of ID

S: ID right perhaps a passport.

T: What do the other Japanese think about that?

S: yes

T: you need an ID?

S: yes

T: do you carry I-

S: is it necessary to carry identity cards in Japan?

S: no

T: you don’t have to pass a medical examination.
no we don’t have identity cards in order to get a drivers’ license we have to carry something

to show
to show yes
to prove who you are all right
Which ones do you not need here?
Which are not necessary!
eye test is unnecessary
is?
is unnecessary
unnecessary!
yes I am not sure now but five years ago was unnecessary
right
other things are like Japan
about two months ago my parents learned to drive
and they need err I would say this err master
[a single print]
yes a single print
err you must drive about seventy hours
and then you can take the test after that

[a single print]
yes a single print
eyou must drive about seventy hours
and then you can take the test after that

[a single print]
yes
more re- restrict no no restricted

[restricted?]
yeah
yeah there are more restorations
that’s another word we haven’t used yet isn’t it? (writes on the board)
restrictions yes

right but you think an eye test is necessary?
yes
ok, eye test in Spain?
e test yeah
is necessary!
three of these things said the last
last three!
yeah high school diploma and
yeah, yeah Taiwan?
yes of course
what?
Yes!
eye test and medical examination
medical examination as well as an eye test?
but is not very serious one
just check your weight and height and
yes right Gabon?
yes
what?
眼 test
eye test is necessary yeah
yeah and the other things as well yes
we have to practice before the test
[you have to practice]
[yes about one month every day about one hour

T: 924 [because they tell you how much,
925 you said seventy hours in in seventy hours are required in China

S: 926 yes you must enter the driving school and make appointment with the school to take enough hours to driving

T: 927 [to get the practice like an airline pilot

S: 928 [yes

T: 929 pass to fly a certain number of hours before he gets his pilot license
930 so it's similar to that I see

S: 931 I wonder if you have it in Britain

T: 932 you need to practice until you can pass the test
933 but it doesn't say how long you must practice for!
934 There is no particular length of time or number of hours
935 when you think you are ready to pass the test or when your instructor think you are ready to pass the test then you take the test
936 but it doesn't matter how long you have been driving
937 And in Libya?

S: 938 practising before the test is up to you

T: 939 [yes that's- yes

S: 940 is of course depends on

T: 941 [how much you need to practice isn't it!

S: 942 yeah

T: 943 [yes

S: 944 but if you know how to drive you don't need

T: 945 [you don't- no

S: 946 but eye test is essential with medical examination in one certificate and,

T: 947 [altogether yes

S: 948 yes you don't have to take writing test

T: 949 [oh

S: 950 you don't have to have a high school diploma

T: 951 [no, no

S: 952 or an international drivers' license

T: 953 right right good
954 Well slightly different in each country
955 each country has its own requirements
956 and as you see at the end we want to discuss about what we know about getting a drivers' license in this country
957 has anybody actually applied for a driving license in this country?

S: 958 I bring international license and drive with it not here

T: 959 you brought an international license with you and you can drive with that license
960 for how long?

S: 961 for one year

T: 962 oh a year?
963 I thought it was six months!

S: 964 you have to renew it

T:
Yes, renew?

Yes

So how would you renew?

How would you renew it?

I ask one of my friends in my country to extend it

Huh you go home and you get another one and you come back yes that’s well that prevents you from having to take one here but I thought the law used to say you can drive in this country on an international driving licence for six months but maybe now it is a year I don’t know that might have changed and then but before that time is finished you have to

[you have to pass the test in Britain]

[that’s right]

I think that was the case that if you are going to stay in this country for longer than six months or the year I don’t know which that is you must take lessons and pass

[you cannot international driver license for ever huh]

No, but if you go home to your country and you renew your own license there so that is still valid you can have another international license

I am afraid that’s one way of avoiding the regulations huh of avoiding the regulations here but people do it

But do be careful they ask you how long have you been here you might say the wrong thing if they ask you that

I think it’s
not to learn how to drive but just to know what is expected in the routine and the way they do it here and if you do that I'm sure you will pass your exam we don't have a medical test here it's not essential for you to have a medical test You must state on the application for your form if you have a medical condition and they list some medical conditions if you have that then you must state it But you do not have a medical test but when you have your driving test they will- the driving examiner would say what's the number of that car at a certain distance away can you read the number plate of that car and I think it’s 25 yards or something like that, with glasses or without glasses if you normally wear glasses can you read that number plate if you normally don’t wear glasses if you ca read, so that is the eye test really it’s just a test whether you can read err the number plate from a long distance and there is now a written test a practical test and a written test multiple choice answers err you must pay a fee Of course and I don’t know what that fee is I am sorry I should have checked on that but I don’t know do you have any more questions about what is necessary in order to pass the test or to drive or to get a license in this country? how could we apply to get a license? you get a form from the post office the post office supplies most forms for all sorts of things but if you have been taking lessons with a driving school they might do that err for you they will make the arrangements any other question about what you need to do? is the test easy? huh I sup-[in Spain is not easy um and I have- I don’t have drivers’ license oh right um I have thought really to get the drivers’ license here oh right yes And then you can take it and drive at home well, it tests you on the things that you need to be able to do and err if you can’t do those things or if you seem to be- if you can do the things but you still seem very nervous they may think he is too nervous to drive on the road sorry go and have more lessons get some more experience and come back and try again If you don’t seem to be confident behind the wheel then they will fail you but you just have to show that you drive and you are a careful driver You look through the mirror and check your mirror and- but you can stop suddenly they test you to see whether you can do an emergency stop that’s what they call it what the language is? well the language is necessary in the necessary in the written test this is why they introduced the written test
because nowadays there are a lot of people from many different countries also from Europe where they speak a different language or from other countries. Sometimes it was felt that they couldn’t always read all the signs that were necessary. Now you have a written test based on the highway code, and I said a multiple choice questions. I don’t know what’s it like because I didn’t need to take a written test when I took my driving license. When I got my driving license it was not necessary to take a written test. It was just you have to show that you can turn a three point turn and that you can reverse around the corner.

I don’t know these days whether you have to drive on the motorway in your driving test now. Before you didn’t. You were allowed to go on the motorway when you felt confident to go on motorway. But perhaps there is also a time when you drive on the motorway because that’s so different from the ordinary road. So I don’t- I can’t answer that question whether it is difficult or not. But if you can drive take a few lessons and see if you feel confident or not.

very confident?

you can drive?

not

Have you learned?

Have you tried to learn to drive?

oh you haven’t at all

I thought you have tried but not
T3 (3rd Session)

T:
1 now on the board modal auxiliary verbs
2 if I say modal verbs what do you think of?
3 what do you think of?
S1:
4 what's this?
T:
5 what do you think of?
S2:
6 about the modal verbs?
T:
7 yeah! what does it mean?
8 What do you:
S:
9 perhaps
T:
10 [what is a modal auxiliary verb?]
S:
11 [+ + +]
T:
12 sub- for example!
S:
13 emphasise your your
T:
14 [emphasise!]
S:
15 yes must do or:
T:
16 ok, we've got must
S:
17 should
T:
18 should
S:
19 can't might
T:
20 ok any more?
S:
21 could
T:
22 ok everybody has got a copy?
23 I have always wondered what modal auxiliary means
24 as far as I know modal from mode the way
25 the way something is done affecting the way some- some idea is expressed
26 auxiliary is just a help just a help

27 so a verb that helps the main verb and as you know all of these are combined with the main verb
28 That’s all that means
29 it’s a bit [+ + +] that but that’s all it means
30 You know the language of- the meaning of grammar terms because I think it might help you
31 Right, let's have a look at the opening task
32 A friend of yours from your country of origin is planning a short vacation in the UK
33 as she is not a British could be a he, as she is not a British citizen she will have to deal with immigration and customs when she enters the UK
34 she doesn’t have much room to pack a lot of things because she is planning to travel with just a backpack
35 here are some of the things she is thinking of taking with her
36 A passport a map of the UK an umbrella a surf board a laptop computer hiking boots fresh fruit a credit card an international drivers' license a tourist visa book s about the UK photographs of his or her hometown a return airline ticket tapes and CDs the kitchen sink the family dog

SS:
37 huh
T:
38 etc, she has a lot of things
39 she is planning
40 do you all understand what those things are? First
S:
41 yeah
T:
42 anything anything
S:
43 [surf board]
T:
44 good I thought that it might be the odd thing
45 What’s the surfboard?
46 do you know?
S:
47 no
T:
48 oh good you know about surfing the
net yeah!

SS:
49 yes

T:
50 well where is that come from?
   Because this-

S:
51 [surfing the sea

T:
52 surfing on the sea!

S:
53 yes

T:
54 you know surfing?

S:
55 yes

T:
56 what’s a surfboard?

S:
57 equipment for surfing

T:
58 ah it could- yeah equipment the err
   not a tool
59 I think we would say equipment
60 a piece of equipment
61 what is it exactly?
62 how do you describe it?

S:
63 a board

T:
64 it’s a board!

SS:
65 huh

T:
66 and what a board is?
67 yeah you know what a surf board is
   then
68 B? have you seen a surf board on
   film or TV?

S:
69 oh yeah

T:
70 oh well ok anybody been surfing?
71 I’ve never had one- I mean in
   England it is not so

SS:
72 [huh

T:
73 well they do it in Cornwall where the
   sea is good ok
74 I think it would be good
75 anymore that you are not sure what it
   is?

S:
76 hike?

T:
77 [hiking boots

S:
78 boots for hiking

SS:
79 huh

T:
80 what’s hiking?

S:
81 walk a long time on on walk
82 walk a long time- a long trip

T:
83 yeah!

S:
84 is like tracking?

T:
85 ah! Yes, Tracking yes it is
86 It's walking a long way usually in
   the country in the mountains
87 you need good boots for that
88 Ok, well the idea is you decide what
   is necessary and what is not or what
   is less necessary Ok!
89 you might want to talk with a partner
   and decide how necessary these
   items are ok?
90 just have a couple of minutes discuss
   with a neighbour (pair work)

T:
91 right! If you-
92 can I have just your attention!
93 If you had a rough conversation
   about what is very important what’s
   not important and so on could you
   then look at step two?
94 Where you’ve got the grammatical
   options,
95 the language options to express the
   differing importance of these things
96 Use the boxes below to help her
   organise the things she wants to take
   to the UK
97 with your partner put them in the
   boxes where you think they belong
98 so we’ve got one
99 it’s necessary and obligatory
100 You can’t enter the UK without this
101 You must take this with you
102 or the negative it’s prohibited yeah
103 you must not take this into the UK
104 Three it’s a good idea to bring this
105 You should take this with you
106 or four it’s ok to bring this but it isn’t really necessary you don’t have to take this
107 so decide which of the items go in each category with your partner (pair work)

T: 108 can I ask how are you doing? 109 right maybe we should exchange some ideas at this point, Yeah?
110 Let’s speak about the first one 111 I think what we think of would be as the strongest obligation,
112 it is necessary and obligatory we can’t enter the UK without this
113 You must take this with you 114 A and V what did you think would go into this category?

S: 115 you mean number one?

T: 116 yeah the first category

S: 117 a passport a tourist visa a credit card and the return ticket

T: 118 can you practice the structure you must!
119 you must!
120 You know as well what we’re doing 121 you must take!

S: 122 you must take a passport with you 123 You must take a err tou- tourist visa with you

T: 124 T! anything else the first category?

S: 125 you must take a return airline ticket with you

T: 126 yeah huh I suppose yeah 127 so you must take a passport 128 you must have a visa 129 not a visa card a visa

SS: 130 huh

T: 131 some people think they must have a visa card

SS: 132 yeah yeah

T: 133 anything else?

S: 134 credit you must have a credit card with you

T: 135 you must take a credit card with you 136 What do you think?

S1: 137 should we don’t have to

T: 138 you don’t have to

S: 139 don’t bring a credit with you

T: 140 why do you say you must H?
141 I’m interested!

S: 142 when you take a credit card you will be [+ + +]

SS: 143 huh

T: 144 well I thought- we can argue with that it’s useful to have

S: 145 yeah

T: 146 why don’t you think it should go into one T?

S: 147 you had better to bring a credit card but you don’t have to because (. ) at the: immigration we don’t have to show the credit card

SS: 148 yes

T: 149 not yet not yet

SS: 150 huh

T: 151 may be since they check your credit status on actually everything 152 now we know in [+ + +] yeah 153 so we would make a distinction between say a passport without which you cannot enter (. ) and the credit card
154 So we- some of you would put credit card into a different category

S: 155 yeah

T: 156 ok, we will come to-
157 is- is anyone any other differences from what A and T said?

S:
158 I don’t think the return ticket is must
T:
159 is not a must
S:
160 is not must should I don’t think must
S1:
161 a return ticket means you can use
this ticket from your country to the
UK and from the UK back to your
country
S2:
162 we think is must this situation
because it’s a sort err sorry is a short
vacation in the UK
163 so because the situation we think is-
is err must is obligatory
S3:
164 perhaps err before you coming-
come to UK you have already get the
visa from the immigration office
165 that is- err- that is- that [+ + +] you
should stay here you can stay here
166 so you don’t have the return ticket,
167 before err before the- your visa
empired empired you must go
T:
168 excuse me before the visa!
S3:
169 visa is expired
T:
170 expired
S3:
171 expired
T:
172 I think expired yes
S:
173 expired
S4:
174 it’s just a short vacation
S5:
175 the situation is that it is talking
about a short vacation so you need
the ticket to return to your home to
home
T:
176 we have to be careful to make a
distinction between things which
are good to do and the things which
are necessary
S:
177 yes
T:
178 things which are even probable,
179 it’s probable that this person would
have a return ticket
180 but is it absolutely obligatory?
181 Would you say it’s obligatory?
S:
182 no
S:
183 no
T:
184 it’s an open question
185 From whose point of view!
186 From whose point of view is it
obligatory!
187 Well you enter the country you
show your passport or your visa
S:
188
189 yeah do you show your ticket?
SS:
190 no
T:
191 no, so where does the obligation
come from for the ticket?
S:
192 yeah it’s your own obligation
T:
193 that- that might be worth thinking
about
194 It’ll be worth thinking as we go
along, perhaps this sense of
obligation
S:
195 because just you pass through the-
the country
196 that means you err [+ + +] the
country and go to the third country
you must show the ticket
197 but if you just go- go to travel this
country you don’t show this
T:
198 but are you sure in the ticket like you
when you catch the train they want
you- you proving that you take your
seat in that sense!
S:
199 yeah
T:
200 ok, so we think certainly here in the
first category you must take a
passport
201 you must have a visa
202 T! another?
203 No just those two!
204 Ok, now it’s prohibited by law so
negative here
D: Did you have anything in this category?
S: fresh fruit
T: so what would we say?
208 You can express it?
S: err
T: can you express it you!
S: yes (.) you m- you must not take fresh fruit into the UK
T: good you must not take fresh fruit, is that true?
214 Do you agree?
S: yes
T: yeah ok, do you know why?
218 perhaps fruit err fruit have the- err pest or other err other chemist-
S: toxins!
T: toxins maybe
S: [+ + +]
T: yes dangerous chemicals poisons
224 you’re not supposed to transfer plants and seed are you?
225 I don’t think
226 Plants and seeds I don’t think you can just take seeds and plants from
country to country
227 I don’t know
S: unless you certify
T: oh right
S: there is a process
T: [to have a license
S: yeah yeah
T: ok, err so you must not take fresh fruit yeah?
234 Otherwise you have fruit and mouth disease, Yeah!
S: huh
T: ok huh anything else that’s prohibited?
S: CDs and tapes sometimes, it depends
T: you must not bring CDs and tapes into the UK?
S: sometimes
T: ah what do you mean by sometimes?
241 don’t you think you mean some types?
S: huh
T: you see the difference
244 I don’t think on Wednesdays,
S: [huh
T: Wednesdays in the first month of the year you can’t bring CDs
247 you mean some types of CDs
248 Ok, is that right?
S: yeah
T: what- what?
251 For example?
252 What do you think you might be prevented from bringing?
S: tapes and CDs which are not licensed
T: ah that’s well expressed
255 Not officially licensed
256 what do you- can you explain that more?
S: huh I think it means the copyright
T: the copyright
259 what do we call those?
260 do you know?
261 sorry?
T: 262 what do we call them when they are not officially:
S: 263 [pirate
T: 264 pirate yes pirating
SS: 265 pirating
T: 266 a pirated copy
267 yes black market type copies
268 You know black market?
S: 269 yeah
T: 270 a good point actually
271 it’s a good point
272 So you must not bring pirated copies
S: 273
[yes
T: 274 of CDs of?
S: 275 [or if they have a forbidden content
T: 276 ha
SS: 277 huh
T: 278 forbidden content
279 A colleague of mine she went-
280 she’s err she’s a professor in Spanish history
281 she went to Mexico
282 She brought back some videos
283 and the police were very interested
what was on these videos yeah!
284 So they asked her about it
285 You made a good point actually
286 We might think well what’s wrong
with CDs and videos but in fact
S: 287
[yes
T: 288 so how could we express this?
289 [+] +] what’s prohibited you!
S: 290 you mustn’t take fresh fruit and take come CDs to UK into the UK
T: 291 no that’s all tapes and CDs
292 certainly fresh fruit and vegetables ok
293 but then would be tapes and CDs
294 what we are going to say?
S: 295 you must not take pirate copies on:
S1: 296 [pirated
T: 297 could be pirate copies actually yes
S: 298 into the UK
T: 299 but not just pirate copies
300 That’s what I wanted to sum up
301 we mentioned other
S: 302 and CDs with forbidden content
T: 303 ah and CDs or!
S: 304 tapes
T: 305 yeah tapes with forbidden content
such as pornography
306 Specific yeah
307 Anything else which is prohibited?
S: 308 steroids drugs alcohol
T: 309 oh yes hold on I was going to- add to-
310 we are going through these items
311 I was going to ask you there were other things we would put into this category
312 so hold on those things
313 you are absolutely right
314 we’ll come to that
315 Any more in category two?
316 no err K! G! what about the third category things which should- it is a good idea to bring with you?
317 Can you give me the structure?
318 You should, K!
S: 319 you should take a map of the UK
T: 320 speak up please!
S: 321 you should take a map of the UK with you
T: 322 G!
S: 323 and you should take credit card with you
T: 324 K!
S: 325 you should take books about the UK
T: 326 no more!
327 Everyone agree?
328 Any differences from the list we have?
S: 329 international drivers' license
T: 330 if you have it
SS: 331 huh
S: 332 I think umbrella is a good idea to bring into UK
T: 333 huh you should take an umbrella
334 A good idea
335 Any other!
336 Did you notice the credit card was in this category
337 what will be a good idea you should
338 anything else from the list?
339 Any differences?
340 Any disagreements about this?
S: 341 you should take a err you should take hiking boots
T: 342 hiking boots?
343 do you agree?
S: 344 we haven’t decided about
T: 345 [you haven’t decided about hiking boots
346 Any any?
347 you don’t think so!
S: 348 no unless the weekend
T: 349 can you explain why you don’t think?
S: 350 no I agree with her
351 I think you should take hiking boots as well
T: 352 oh, I thought you said you didn’t
353 sorry I misheard
SS: 354 huh
S: 355 [+ + +] is going to do ok?
T: 356 [yeah yeah how many people go on hiking in this room?
357 How many people go on hiking apart from me?
358 do you understand the question?
SS: 359 yeah
T: 360 just me and K!
361 you are lazy people
SS: 362 huh
T: 363 lazy sleepy shopping TV watching
SS: 364 huh
T: 365 lambs
366 lizards
367 really I’m amazed
368 Amazing country like China
369 beautiful country like Japan with mountains (.) and shopping
SS: 370 huh
T: 371 in Britain which ah some beautiful countryside too you must,
372 but that might be a recommendation
373 you must go to Scotland
374 You must take some boots
375 but you must also take a waterproof
376 Yes, All right, ok,
377 now, Four it’s ok to bring it but it isn’t really necessary
378 Steve what did you think?
S: 379 photographs, surf board
T: 380 [can you give them the structure please?
S: 381 yes it’s ok to bring photographs surf board and a laptop,
382 [use the modal please!]
383 use the modal for better practice we could say that
384 but we will only put it in the colloquial model
S:
385 ok, you don’t have to take photographs surf board and a computer laptop
T:
386 err laptop computer
S:
387 laptop computer
T:
388 yes always that laptop computer
389 Does anyone agree with that list?
390 you don’t have to take a surf board
391 you don’t have to take a laptop computer
392 and you don’t have to take photographs of your hometown
393 Anything else that you don’t have to?
S:
394 but we only put the return ticket
SS:
395 huh
T:
396 huh he is worried- he is really worried about the ticket
SS:
397 huh
T:
398 but we don’t want to take it away from you
SS:
399 huh
T:
400 you will get back to China
SS:
401 huh
T:
402 he’s very worried
403 we will all put some money together to get you don’t worry
404 Where are we going to put the return ticket
405 a good point
SS:
406 huh
T:
407 it’s a good point because if we haven’t put it in the first one the absolute obligation where do we put it?
408 L?
S:
409 in my opinion it’s the third one
T:
410 [the third one]
S:
411 yeah
T:
412 you should,
S:
413 you should err airline
T:
414 [you should have a return airline ticket with you]
415 it’s a damn good idea
SS:
416 huh
T:
417 yeah
418 Now we mentioned err Steve began to mention other things which we might put into this
419 Would you like to just err well let’s just do it now quite quickly
420 let’s sort of these-
421 anything else that you think you must have that is not on the list?
422 Anything that you think you must bring with you
423 In the strongest sense of obligation?
424 I thought M might say mobile phone
SS:
425 huh
T:
426 just teasing
427 nothing that is really necessary obligatory?
428 do you need any any medical certification any record of injections or?
429 some countries you need
S:
430 [some countries]
T:
431 you need a document which says you are insured or, do you need to be insured?
S:
432 insured?
T:
yes, are you allowed to enter without!

S: yes
T: no you don’t need!
S: it’s up to you
T: it’s up to you ok, ok
S: do you think of anything else?
T: it’s up to you ok, ok
S: kish
T: kish?
S: cash
T: oh cash
S: huh
T: you must have cash
S: for I think so
T: is that!
S: [but there is not obligation
T: [it’s a different sense of obligation, isn’t it!
449 Really this is external isn’t it!
450 What are the official requirements
451 are you must have a passport
452 must have a visa
453 yeah then we’ve got these other things which you might feel err absolutely necessary
S: but sometimes you must have the: if have a: address in the UK
455 because the immigration office will check the address in UK when enter this country
T: um
S: this is necessary
T: I think that’s when you are coming for longer
459 this is a personal visiting
460 so it’s perhaps slightly different yes

T: just [+ + ]
S: right yes
T: the address is not err
S: [is not obligatory is it?
465 Not necessary ok
466 anything that you’d add to the prohibitions?
467 You were mentioning something
468 tell us what you must not and use the structure please
469 you must not bring?
S: you must not bring drugs, spirits weapons to the UK
T: all drug?
S: err some drug that forbidden certain drugs
T: certain drugs
S: and no all of the spirits is not prohibited
475 You can bring some: [+ + ] of spirit
T: you can, can’t you?
477 You can bring err
S: [can bring
T: yeah is- is what they call it?
480 They call it a quota or a legal amount isn’t it?
481 you can bring in
S: um
T: quota yeah an acceptable amount
484 There is another [+ + ]
485 so I think you can bring Sakae
486 or what is a Chinese spirit? [+ + ]
S: [+ + ]
T: anything else you must not bring in?
S: you cannot bring the things which are prohibited in Washington
T: in Washington?
S: 491 yeah some kinds of animals,
T: 492 [ah yeah
S: 493 are prohibited
T: 494 animals yes we have mentioned that actually have we?
495 I think we must not bring animals except under license!
SS: 496 yeah
T: 497 or arrangement probably because you-
S: 498 [some crops
T: 499 crops products
S: 500 and some magazines with forbidden content
T: 501 magazines books
502 printed matter
503 we could say in general printed matter,
504 printed material with forbidden content,
SS: 505 [yes
T: 506 you must not bring in
507 anything else?
508 ok, what do you think is a good idea to bring with you?
S: 509 [+] [+] T:
510 maybe just have a thirty second with your partner and think of some of things perhaps which are not on the list (pair work)
T: 511 right, I think this is the category which could probably the longest list and with the biggest disagreement
S: 512 yeah
T: 513 I have someone
514 I have been on trips with her and for her it’s essential to have a hair dryer
SS: 515 huh
T: 516 you know it’s not just a good idea right?
517 so a good idea to bring into the UK with you boyfriend or girl friend!
SS: 518 huh
T: 519 no!
SS: 520 huh
T: 521 because trouble
SS: 522 huh T:
523 any [+] [+] that you can add?
S: 524 yeah [+] [+] T:
525 let’s move on quickly
SS: 526 huh
T: 527 D! what did you and K!
528 what did you decide would be a good idea that is not on the list or what extra items?
529 Can you with a:
530 try to practice the structure
531 it’s a good idea to!
532 Or you should!
S: 533 I think it’s a good idea to bring some medicine
T: 534 Medicine!
S: 535 Some gifts
T: 536 Some gifts!
S: 537 film
T: 538 oh add film
S: 539 and camera
T: 540 do you think you need to bring film?
S: 541 yes
T: 542 why why bring film?
S:
543 yes [+ + +]
T:
544 I cannot buy a camera because it’s expensive
545 and you don’t want to replace it
546 but why film?
S:
547 because I think the film in China is much cheaper
T:
548 ah a good reason
549 A good idea if coming from China where it is cheaper to bring film with you
550 Yes Americans tend to do that too because it’s cheaper [+ + +] in Scottish place yeah [+ + +]
551 so really good
552 Camera!
553 you think it’s good idea you should take film as well!
554 It’s cheaper!
S:
555 and some gift
T:
556 some gifts?
557 Ha! That’s a good idea!
558 To bring some gifts
559 Why?
S:
560 you need to
T:
561 [+ + +]
SS:
562 huh
S:
563 something you can only buy in your hometown,
T:
564 [ah
S:
565 you can take
T:
566 because it would be special for people here
567 Yeah good point good point [+ + +]
568 here we’ve got different things
569 M! what did you think?
S:
570 you should take a photocopy of passport
T:
571 [ah! Intelligent yeah
572 Good idea
573 sorry I stopped you
574 go on please!
S:
575 and cash
T:
576 oh yes this where cash is coming yeah!
577 How much cash?
SS:
578 huh
S:
579 five hundred pounds
T:
580 five hundred pounds?
SS:
581 huh
T:
582 [+ + +] ok, do you know for how long is she coming for?
583 Short vacation, we don’t know how short?
584 so cash would depend a little
585 Cash in in Japanese Yen or in in Sterling?
S:
586 Sterling
T:
587 in pounds
S:
588 pounds yes
T:
589 so D! in your own currency or in travellers’ checks or in!
590 you said cash actually which is not
SS:
591 [+ + +]
T:
592 let’s think about this
593 yes the difference between- I think
594 do you use travellers’ checks?
S:
595 yes
T:
596 it’s safer yeah!
S:
597 yeah
S:
598 you won’t high err high fees check-
T:
599 [you pay for it don’t you yeah?
S:
600 [+ + +]
T:
T: do you wanna carry 500 pounds in cash with you?
S: aha
T: is that a good idea?
S: it's very dangerous
T: I think this some people carry lots of money in their wallets and things
S: cash
SS: huh
T: some don't what do you think what's your habit M! do you like cash in your pocket or do you take travellers' checks to!
S: cash
SS: huh
T: yeah huh ok, so cash with you! Ok, what else should you bring K! what did you- anything that don't have to
S: we should take [+ + +]
T: that's a good idea huh
S: insurance
T: some insurance! Sorry we can't hear you please speak up
S: some insurance documents
T: oh insurance documents Yeah just a paper which says you are insured Good, so you should take insurance you should bring cash, you should bring camera, you should bring film, if you wanna save money on film
S: it's a good idea to bring a knife
T: it's a good idea to bring a knife!
S: err
T: [you've heard about Leeds you've heard about Leeds]
S: the reason is that a swiz army yeah err
T: [does everyone know what that is? yes]
S: why E?
S: I think is very useful err you [+ + +]
SS: huh
T: but we heard earlier you must not bring a weapon into the UK huh what's the difference?
S: it's not a weapon
T: you could do all kinds of insurance some insurance!
SS: huh
T: it's a good idea actually Useful knives aren't they! I've had one for about 21 years actually take camping with me very useful good idea Any more idea A! about what you should- you think you should bring!
S: you should take an electric dictionary
T: electric dictionary!
S: electronic
T:
661 electronic I think it is
S: 662 electronic
T: 663 electronic, it's got a chip [++]
664 electric means it just works with electricity just like me
SS: 665 huh
T: 666 but electronic means got a memory which I don't have
SS: 667 huh
T: 668 why?
669 why should you take an electronic dictionary?
670 Why electronic dictionary?
671 Not just a dictionary
S: 672 it's light
T: 673 true lighter than the book good point
S: 674 many- err you can't understand the meaning of sign
T: 675 [aha! very basic things like signs you can
SS: 676 huh
T: 677 ha! good idea
678 Any more?
S: 679 I think you should take some snack from your country
T: 680 take a snack!
S: 681 yes huh perhaps you can’t get used of the foreign foods
T: 682 yeah maybe for a short visit, you’ve got realistic yeah
683 because?
S: 684 I don’t know [++]
T: 685 make you feel better!
S: 686 yes you feel better
687 and sometimes specially you carry some chocolate
688 it can give you some energy and [++]
T: 689 well expressed yeah
690 I think that’s true because you get tired in another country
691 It’s tiring being in another country
692 specially when you’ve first arrived stressful
SS: 693 [yes
T: 694 anything else you should?
S: 695 yes
T: 696 what H!
S: 697 you should your CD
T: 698 your CV?
S: 699 yeah, for [++]
T: 700 for a short visit!
701 For a short visit to the UK!
S: 702 yeah
T: 703 because!
S: 704 when you come err with a professional objective
T: 705 oh yes
S: 706 yeah
T: 707 you come with a professional objective
S: 708 objective
T: 709 do you know- sorry yes please ask if you- I thought- that’s why I wrote it up
710 Do you know what CV is?
S: 711 resume!
T: 712 Americans call it resume
713 a curriculum vita
714 the Latin word
715 Summary of your career
716 I think you are right
717 With a professional objective
718 If you go to a country with a
    professional objective then it’s a
    good idea
719 What else should you take?
720 Anything?
721 Anything else?
S:
722 You should take an opener
T:
723 Opener?
S:
724 Yeah
T:
725 What kind of opener?
T:
726 Just for open the bottle
SS:
727 Huh (end of side A)
S:
728 A light a light
T:
729 A lighter a lighter yeah
730 What about an address book?
731 Or is this obvious?
732 An address book!
733 Do you think you should take easy to
    forget and then all your addresses
    and telephone numbers of your
    friends?
S:
734 Yeah
T:
735 No?
736 An address book!
737 Not necessary
738 What about an adapter?
739 An electrical adapter?
SS:
740 Huh
T:
741 Yes as any one being caught out
    bring something and find it can’t
    work
742 Very easy to do
743 What is the voltage in China any
    way?
S:
744 [+ + +]
T:
745 Oh that’s lucky
S:
746 Charges about 41
S1:
747 Two four
S2:
748 Here is 24
T:
749 Two twelve?
750 Here is two forty (an argument
    between Chinese students)
T:
751 Did you get that the Chinese?
SS:
752 Huh
T:
753 They don’t seem to be sure [+ + +]
754 May be it’s different in different
    places
755 In Japan I think is it two twenty?
S:
756 No it’s one hundred and ten
T:
757 Oh it’s one hundred and ten like
    America
758 So you need adapters for everything
S:
759
    [Yeah]
T:
760 It’s a big thing
761 Yeah! So may be you must take it if
    you want to bring some electrical
762 May be you need it
763 All right let’s go on
764 I think we were at step four
765 Turn over on the back of the first
    page
766 Now we’ve got some examples-
767 What I want you to do write about
    something- items you’ve chosen
768 They could be from the list or any
    other ones added to the list in
    different categories
769 Could you write a sentence and an
    explanation why!
770 The example here you must have a
    passport right!
771 It’s necessary and then the
    explanation why we use must here
772 Alternatives you have to have a
    passport or you have got to,
773 You know those!
774 You’ve got to have a visa
775 You’ve got to have a passport
776 You have to you must
777 Something is necessary and
    obligatory
You must not or you mustn't of course bring fresh fruit and you get you CANNOT It is not possible You can bring a surf board something is permitted You should bring a credit card Use should to show something is a good idea You don't have to for something can give people problems it's negative it's absence of a prohibition Or absence of obligation excuse me, Absence of obligation You do not have to it shows that something is permitted but not necessary you can do this if you want to but not required to, Right So can you go back to into your categories and on your notepad on a piece of paper write sentences and give explanation why you use why you put them in that category We've got the example of a passport so I think ( ) maybe the visa! maybe you should write for example in the first category you should write about the visa you must have a visa you've got to have a visa and then give me the reason, why you use the strongest and so on I think one more we can add to the first category but you can write two I think for the other categories Do you understand? Do you understand what I mean?

1. Why you expressed it in that way (pair work)
   - you should have just about finished that I hope by now
   - Get to the last couple of tasks
   - they can be quite simple
   - I think the examples
   - Can I hear one or two?
   - Before time goes on
   - T! what did you write for must?

   2. you must have a passport because you have to show it at the immigration

   3. good sentence K!

   4. must take a: tourist visa
      - must take a visa actually

   5. and the reason or explanation!

   6. yeah because you must show it to the immigration personnel

   7. ok and the grammatical explanation of using must! Yeah?

   8. we use must to show the something is required by law

   9. right so an official or may say an external obligation on you often by law

10. Ok! let's go on to the second group

11. T! have you got an example of something you must not or cannot!

12. you must not bring fresh fruit into the UK because it is prohibited by law

13. because it is prohibited by law,

14. or because of prohibition or because it is a sentence

15. because of followed by a noun

16. Ok, law again yeah the strongest another negative

17. err E have you got a negative here?

18. you must not bring pirated copies to the UK because
839 [good

S: 840 because it is not allowed by the law

T: 841 very good because it is not allowed by the law yes
842 And you must not
843 Has anyone used you cannot in the same situation
844 G! have you got you cannot?
845 Just for practice

S: 846 you cannot bring fresh fruit into the UK because it is forbidden by the law

T: 847 right fine
848 Fine, Ok, so this is the negative obligation
849 if you like prohibition strongest kind
850 Fine, Now what about something you can do!
851 K! have you something you can do?

S: 852 [+ + +]

T: 853 you can yes

S: 854 it’s permitted

T: 855 it’s permitted isn’t it?
856 go on excuse me

S: 857 [you can bring it if you want to

T: 858 you could bring it if you want to yes good
859 The use of can
860 any other from the can category
861 L! have you got one?

S: 862 you can bring an umbrella

T: 863 you can bring an umbrella huh
864 it permitted by law yes
865 Huh it is obligatory if you live here
866 every British citizen huh
867 ok, yeah you can bring an umbrella
868 Right how about the shoulds
869 H! have you got a should for us?

S: 870 you should bring a map of UK

T: 871 you should bring a map of the UK
872 Explain please!

S: 873 because it is good for your travel

T: 874 it is good to your: for travel For travel
875 it is good for travelling
876 it is good to find your way around
877 to find your way around would be a nice expression for that
878 Yeah, yes, Not necessary but a good idea helpful
879 Another should please, M!

S: 880 you should bring an umbrella in case it rains

T: 881 huh you should bring umbrella in case it rains
882 Good a very nice expression
883 in case it rains good
884 Good idea
885 S! should

S: 886 more or less the same

T: 887 all right
888 Any!
889 A! different should?

S: 890 no

T: 891 no different shoulds ok
892 ok, things you don’t have to
893 absence of obligation F!

S: 894 you do not have to bring a laptop computer because it is very heavy to carry on

T: 895 very good yeah
896 You don’t have to
897 Something else K?

S: 898 you don’t have to take a tennis racket

T: 899 huh

S: 900 huh because if you don’t want to play tennis

T: 901 it’s true you don’t have to
902 Huh E!
you don’t have to bring the insurance document because it is not required.

T: very good it is not required by law
good you don’t have to

B! have you got don’t have to?

S: you don’t have to bring the photographs of your hometown because you don’t need it

T: it’s a good idea but you don’t need it yeah good yes good yes similar to don’t need isn’t it?
You don’t need to you don’t have to
Right, That’s pretty good
did you have any problems with your examples?
No nothing
you need to check on that?
All right let’s go on just in the last [+ +] something else
Do any of you drive already?
Are you licensed to drive a car?

SS: /yes//yes/

T: in your home country ok
do you know how you-
what you need in the UK
does any one know what you need in the UK to drive a car?
Obviously you need a license
You have to have a car

SS: huh

T: express it please practice the structure

S: insurance

T: no no practice the structure
do you have to have a car to drive?

S: you have to,

T: [you have to own the car

SS: huh

T: express it please

S: you don’t have to own a car
[you must take lessons

S: you must take the exam

T: hold on K

S: you must- what kind of exam?

T: driving exam

S: I think you must know actually

T: I think you have to take an exam

S: when I passed you didn't have to but I think you have to take an exam now

T: Anyways, What else do you think you need or you must do

S: you must know the law of the transportation

T: ah actually you must but that's part of-

S: how do they know when you have the skill?

T: take exam!

S: you take the test

T: Yeah, So this is a written exam ok!

S: and you must take that test

T: It's called the test driving exam isn't it?

S: In fact you must pass the test not just take it huh

T: it's very easy to take

S: huh

T: huh it's not so easy to pass

S: so you must take the test when you actually drive

T: and the examiner sits next to you and does this (miming) and so no

S: huh

T: yeah tells you what to do ok!

S: these are- I would say these are the things you must do

T: I think that's about right

S: Ah what about age?

T: Do you know?

S: In the UK, What about the UK?

T: then I'll ask you about your own countries

S: Is there an age requirement?

T: You must be?

S: You must be?

T: I think it's 17 and that's strange

S: to drive a car or!

T: to drive a car yeah

S: Strange age here we have many strange [+ + +]

T: How old do you have to be in Spain?

S: 16

T: yeah

S: 17

T: 18

S: to drive a car

T: you can drive bikes

S: oh yes sure

T: and you drive a certain size of motorbike!

S: 16

T: 16!

S: yeah

T: and you can drive a bigger one when you get older yeah

S: and it goes up in size but the car I think you have to be 17

T: in America, some states of America it's 14 or 12

S: you know in the country in the big country states you get little [+ + +]

T: driving farm trucks

S: we've seen them in television anyway

T: Ok, err things you must do in the UK

S: if you want to drive on the roads, you must have the skill

T: but how do you do that
1022 you must learn from experts in the driving schools
1023 so you must take official lessons
1024 You must take a written exam,
1025 and you must take a practical
1026 you could take practical test [+ + +]
1027 and you must be a certain age
1028 Ah and I think you must also be younger than a certain age
1029 Is it 80?
1030 I think if you don’t like I’m not sure the exact age
1031 so I’ll put under a certain age
1032 Under a certain age [+ + +]

S: 1033 there are not limit
T: 1034 I think it’s 80 or 85
1035 it’s quite old
SS: 1036 hum

T: 1037 yeah and after a certain age
1038 well I think age is quite old
SS: 1039 yeah huh

T: 1040 I [+ + +] do
S: 1041 you could drive!

T: 1042 oh I’m not it’s not my personal opinion K
1043 I’m just give you what the official position is
1044 Err I think you have to take a re-test every couple of years when you after a certain age
1045 after 75 or something you have to be tested regularly
1046 Obviously because people’s mental faculties physical faculties deteriorates yes?
1047 is that true?

SS: 1048 yeah

T: 1049 ok I think these are all the obligations aren’t they!
1050 The obligations
1051 oh you must pay!

SS: 1052 huh

T: 1053 you must pay for the test

1054 Well it’s true
1055 you have to pay,
1056 you know no pay no play

SS: 1057 huh

T: 1058 and you must swear a lot to drive a car

S: 1059 swear!

T: 1060 you must swear a lot
1061 What a bloody hell do you think you’re doing

SS: 1062 huh

T: 1063 no! yes

SS: 1064 huh

T: 1065 have you got no brain yeah?
1066 No? [+ + +] this is the requirements everybody grows horns when they say[+ + +]
1068 they are different behind the car
1069 behind the wheel of the car it’s true no?

SS: 1070 yeah

T: 1071 I think it’s very true
1072 all these are necessary
1073 Now err I think we’ve covered everything
1074 we also have to- oh by the way in the test you have to have you eye sight tested
1075 you must have certain kind of eyesight yeah?

S: 1076 you must be able to identify the car

T: 1077 yeah the car in front of you
1078 the registration at a certain distance
1079 I think
1080 ok! now how does that compare with your country?
1081 What in Taiwan?
1082 Do you have a license?
1083 excuse me do you have a license?

S: 1084 yes
T: what you have to do?
S: it’s almost the same as the UK but before we take the test we have to have a health examination
T: ah!
S: eye test something like that
T: [because the eye test is just done by the driving instructor by the driving examiner in the UK
S: they have to examine your physical:
T: [fitness
S: yeah
T: what?
S: Heart and everything?
T: yeah
S: um
T: ok so you must have the certificate when you go to the:
S: yeah
T: to prove that
S: 18
T: ok, but otherwise IS: the age the same?
S: 18
T: eighteen!
S: I don’t know
in Spain you must have the L in your car when you pass the exam

T: 1139 not E?
S: 1140 no L yeah
T: 1141 L?
S: 1142 yeah when you pass the exam
T: 1143 [what it stands for?
S: 1144 during one year
T: 1145 what does it stand for in Spanish?
S: 1146 is just to to advertise the others that you have passed the exam recently,
T: 1147 [um right
S: 1148 and you have in a
T: 1149 [it’s P in some countries yeah
S: 1150 P?
T: 1151 yeah, I don’t know yeah L yeah
1152 but I think now yes it may be an obligation to have a sign when you have just passed
SS: 1153 um
T: 1154 which might be P as well for probational
1155 but I'm not sure
1156 may be not actually
1157 so it’s a versatile is involved in this
1158 so in Japan you have to be 18?
S: 1159 [yeah
T: 1160 you must- do you take a physical exam?
S: 1161 only eyesight test
T: 1162 by the ex- the driving examiner?
S: 1163 um:
T: 1164 or an official one?
S: 1165 actual
T: 1166 with an optician or ophthalmologist?
S: 1167 not by optician but in the actual test
T: 1168 right yes this similar to UK
1169 I think yes
1170 M! do you drive?
S: 1171 [+ + +]
T: 1172 what- do you mean- can you say [+ ++] you must have?
S: 1173 you must take psychological test
T: 1174 yeah! A psychological test!
S: 1175 yeah
T: 1176 you must!
1177 Well what does that do?
1178 like IQ test,
T: 1179 [right what what-
SS: 1180 huh
T: 1181 do you know what the idea is of that?
1182 what the reason is for that?
S: 1183 I don’t know
1184 Some people sometimes err not suitable driving,
T: 1185 [oh I know
1186 The roads are full of people not suitable for driving but there they are, Huh
SS: 1187 huh
T: 1188 but
S: 1189 [some sort of people they can’t drive
T: 1190 what sort of people?
S:
1191 for some people they can't enter the school for driving
T: 1192 well based on this psychological test?
S: 1193 yes
T: 1194 um um fine I didn’t know that 1195 it’s interesting 1196 Otherwise things are what T is saying is much the same
S: 1197 yes
T: 1198 yeah ok, what about in China then 1199 What’s the- what must you have or must you do?
S: 1200 we don’t need to take the psychology test
T: 1201 you don’t need the psychological test 1202 What must you have really?
S: 1203 [++ ]
T: 1204 you don’t remember taking that so ok
S: 1205 you must have been 18
T: 1206 you must be 18
S: 1207 you must be 18 and you enter the driving school to learn how to drive 1208 but you must pass the exam or the testing 1209 for practice you must know the law or the information of them
T: 1210 ah the rules of the road!
S: 1211 yes the roads
T: 1212 [traffic laws
S: 1213 yes
T: 1214 the rules of the road
S: 1215 [++ ]
T: 1216 we have the so-called highway code which is not exactly laws 1217 but it’s sort of recommended way
S: 1218 that’s recommendation
T: 1219 recommended way to drive 1220 I think it is law actually 1221 I think the police can stop you if you violate the high- 1222 now these are the obligations which you must do to get a licence 1223 what about what you think you should- what should you do to be a good driver?
S: 1224 what would you say if you advise someone how to drive?
T: 1225 what should you- who drives?
S: 1226 Who drives?
T: 1227 Ok, but you can still have opinions I think about this 1228 What do you think you should [++ ] or should you do to be a good driver?
S: 1229 you should be very quiet when driving
T: 1230 quiet!
S: 1231 yeah
T: 1232 you can use a Spanish type
S: 1233 calm
T: 1234 very calm that’s
S: 1235 [yeah very calm
T: 1236 you should be calm yes, 1237 not so easy to do always
S: 1238 yeah
T: 1239 can you give a reason?
S: 1240 because you can control you can control yourself err
T: 1241 [huh
S: 1242 driving you can control yourself in any situation
T: 1243 this is true
S: 1244 yeah
S: 1245 you should not keep the high fast at any time
T: 1246 you shouldn’t be too fast
1247 Any time!
S1: highway
T: 1250 you shouldn’t drive too fast
S: 1251 shouldn’t you shouldn’t keep the high:
T: 1252 you shouldn’t drive too fast
S: 1253 too fast drive too fast
T: 1254 too fast
S: 1255 yes
S: 1256 flash your (. ) front light
T: 1257 you shouldn’t flash out the car
1258 because!
S: 1259 it cause accidents
T: 1260 it could
1261 I think we can’t say [+ + +]
S: 1262 could
T: 1263 cause an accident
S: 1264 cause an accident
T: 1265 it’s aggressive
S: 1266 yes
T: 1267 so you shouldn’t be aggressive
1268 K! do you drive?
S: 1269 yes
T: 1270 what should a good driver do do you think?
S: 1271 [+ + +]
T: 1272 huh sure but can you think of other things which you think someone should,
S: 1273 [I have to be careful
T: 1274 you have to be careful
S: 1275 yes
T: 1276 how how are you careful?
1277 What is to be careful?
S: 1278 um:
1279 you have to be careful or other cars
T: 1280 so you have to be aware of them maybe you know
1281 You should look around you
S: 1282 um
T: 1283 use your mirrors
S: 1284 it help
T: 1285 it helps
1286 not just for!
SS: 1287 huh
T: 1288 how many times yeah!
SS: 1289 huh
T: 1290 particularly one sex
SS: 1291 huh
T: 1292 but I won’t say which one
SS: 1293 huh
T: 1294 politically dangerous
SS:
T: 1295 yeah
1296 huh but then men shouldn't be doing
SS: 1297 huh oh
T: 1298 is that right?
SS: 1299 yeah
T: 1300 huh what else?
S: 1301 I think you should concentrate on the driving
T: 1302 yeah concentrate
S: 1303 yeah
T: 1304 and not!
S: 1305 not dis: distracts you not [+] distraction
T: 1306 not be distracted
S: 1307 yes
T: 1308 good good not be easily distracted yes that's good
S: 1309 and you should help other car
T: 1310 [yeah
S: 1311 when they have problems because it's not,
T: 1312 good point
S: 1313 very common
T: 1314 yeah I think you should
1315 that's good if you can isn't it?
1316 Help other cars
1317 I think you should be polite if you can
1318 In your letting people out
SS: 1319 yes
T: 1320 I don't know what they're like
1321 what the habits are like,
1322 where you come from
1323 It varies in Britain
1324 Go to London and people sh::
(sound effect)
SS: 1325 huh
T: 1326 when you are used to driving in the north you go down there and suddenly you know not always can be- go to another people in Yorkshire people are pretty:
1327 Leeds can be a little bit like all big cities I think
S: 1328 yeah
T: 1329 in [+] they are very polite almost very polite almost too polite everybody stops
SS: 1330 huh
S: 1331 in the small towns actually
T: 1332 [and very slow sometimes
S: 1333 yes
SS: 1334 huh
T: 1335 I live in Scarborough which is on the coast
1336 has a lot of retired people and [+] the cap and gloves for driving
SS: 1337 huh
T: 1338 they've got a beautiful car because they're retired
1339 they've got lots of savings
1340 so they've got beautiful cars (miming the way they drive)
SS: 1341 huh
T: 1342 28 miles an hour
SS: 1343 huh
T: 1344 and you are behind and horn
1345 get out of the way (sound effect)
SS: 1346 huh
T: 1347...
S: 1347 right well we must stop [+ +]
T: 1348 the most important thing
S: 1349 [oh sorry
T: 1350 you shouldn’t drive and you drink too much
S: 1351 very good point actually
T: 1352 huh
S: 1353 well one thing is illegal
T: 1354 yeah you must not drive with- in Britain
S: 1355 can you drink anything in China and drive or is there a certain limit?
T: 1356 limit
S: 1357 because of the limit in Britain
T: 1358 but in some countries have no alcohol
S: 1359 in Sweden for example you mustn’t have any alcohol by law
T: 1360 but in Britain there is a limit
S: 1361 And which- over which you must not go good point
T: 1362 What do you feel about it?
S: 1363 of course I I not buy a car because
T: 1364 [because you like drinking!
S: 1365 yeah
T: 1366 huh
S: 1367 [+ +]
T: 1368 all right yes I wouldn’t like to get into a car with someone who has drunk too much
S: 1369 But what do you feel about whether people should or shouldn’t drink when they drive?
S: 1370 actually I think [+ +]
T: 1371 do you think they should?
S: 1372 yes shouldn’t
T: 1373 none
S: 1374 [none
T: 1375 or a little
S: 1376 none
T: 1377 even a small beer
S: 1378 no no
T: 1379 [you really don’t like it at all you think they shouldn’t
S: 1380 any other opinion?
T: 1381 T I do you drive and drink a little sometimes?
S: 1382 no never
T: 1383 never!
S: 1384 yeah
T: 1385 because you feel it’s wrong not a good idea?
S: 1386 yes
T: 1387 M!
S: 1388 [+ +]
T: 1389 we must stop because you have a break and then-
S: 1390 thank you
T: 1391 ok I will see you during the programme
T4 (3rd Session)

S: 1 what's this?
T: 2 what's THAT?
3 if you kindly distribute, I
would let you know in second

SS: 4 /quiz/
T: 5 yes another quiz,
SS: 6 /oh/

T: 7 huh huh huh, but this one is a very PLEASANT one,
(papers distributed among students)
8 all right, this is a task you're doing tonight,
9 something different
10 but before doing the task, let me ask you some questions
11 ah how many of you guys have friends abroad
12 friends and or relatives leaving abroad?

S: 13 relatives
T: 14 relatives or friends
15 yeah(,) S and H, now, a:re they H iS: he or she a relative
or a friend?

S: 16 my family
T: 17 your fam- what do you mean
by my family?

S: 18 mother brother and- [+ + +]
T: 19 oh! yeah, yeah,
S: 20 [+ + +]
T: 21 no, no, they are your family
22 your mother and your brother
is:: err you: you: refer to them as your family members

23 so your mother and your brother live in America =

24 [and my sisters
T: 25 = and your sister,
26 your sister live in America, right?
27 where?

28 what?

29 where in America?

30 my sister lives in Canada and
my mother and brother and other sister =

31 [the other sister

32 = yeah she is in Sweden

33 oh, in Sweden
34 so you- why: the the some of them are in Canada, some are in Sweden,
35 but you said America I got the picture you talked about the United States

36 I didn’t say-

37 I’m sorry there are- my mistake, all right,
38 you have relatives and family abroad?

39 yeah

40 where?

41 in Europe and United States

42 these are relatives and family and friends,
43 of course you were in television business you know- you know lots of people
44 interesting () who else?
families and friends?

You have family and friends

S: yes

T: who?

S: my uncle

T: where?

S: in [Sweden]

T: in [Sweden] okay

54 only one uncle right?

55 does he have family over there?

S: yes

T: is he married

S: yes he's married

T: okay, S?

S: in the United States, my uncles and in Germany my aunt

T: your aunt is in Germany, your uncle is in the States

S: in France and Spain Sweden and [+ + +]

T: okay, do you have any friends err err or relatives?

S: [+ + +]

T: all right, and you raised your hands too, friends or relatives?

S: my relatives

T: who are they?

S: 45 families and friends?

46 You have family and friends

S: 47 yes

T: 48 who?

S: 49 my uncle

T: 50 where?

S: 51 in [Sweden]

T: 52 in [Sweden] okay

53 only one uncle right?

55 does he have family over there?

S: yes

T: is he married

S: yes he's married

T: okay, S?

S: in the United States, my uncles and in Germany my aunt

T: your aunt is in Germany, your uncle is in the States

S: in France and Spain Sweden and [+ + +]

T: okay, do you have any friends err err or relatives?

S: [+ + +]

T: all right, and you raised your hands too, friends or relatives?

S: my relatives

T: who are they?

S: 45 families and friends?

46 You have family and friends

S: 47 yes

T: 48 who?

S: 49 my uncle

T: 50 where?

S: 51 in [Sweden]

T: 52 in [Sweden] okay

53 only one uncle right?

55 does he have family over there?

S: yes

T: is he married

S: yes he's married

T: okay, S?

S: in the United States, my uncles and in Germany my aunt

T: your aunt is in Germany, your uncle is in the States

S: in France and Spain Sweden and [+ + +]

T: okay, do you have any friends err err or relatives?

S: [+ + +]

T: all right, and you raised your hands too, friends or relatives?

S: my relatives

T: who are they?

S: 45 families and friends?

46 You have family and friends

S: 47 yes

T: 48 who?

S: 49 my uncle

T: 50 where?

S: 51 in [Sweden]

T: 52 in [Sweden] okay

53 only one uncle right?

55 does he have family over there?

S: yes

T: is he married

S: yes he's married

T: okay, S?

S: in the United States, my uncles and in Germany my aunt

T: your aunt is in Germany, your uncle is in the States

S: in France and Spain Sweden and [+ + +]

T: okay, do you have any friends err err or relatives?

S: [+ + +]

T: all right, and you raised your hands too, friends or relatives?

S: my relatives

T: who are they?

S: 45 families and friends?

46 You have family and friends

S: 47 yes

T: 48 who?

S: 49 my uncle

T: 50 where?

S: 51 in [Sweden]

T: 52 in [Sweden] okay

53 only one uncle right?

55 does he have family over there?

S: yes

T: is he married

S: yes he's married

T: okay, S?

S: in the United States, my uncles and in Germany my aunt

T: your aunt is in Germany, your uncle is in the States

S: in France and Spain Sweden and [+ + +]

T: okay, do you have any friends err err or relatives?

S: [+ + +]

T: all right, and you raised your hands too, friends or relatives?

S: my relatives

T: who are they?

S: 45 families and friends?

46 You have family and friends

S: 47 yes

T: 48 who?

S: 49 my uncle

T: 50 where?

S: 51 in [Sweden]

T: 52 in [Sweden] okay

53 only one uncle right?

55 does he have family over there?

S: yes

T: is he married

S: yes he's married

T: okay, S?

S: in the United States, my uncles and in Germany my aunt

T: your aunt is in Germany, your uncle is in the States

S: in France and Spain Sweden and [+ + +]

T: okay, do you have any friends err err or relatives?

S: [+ + +]

T: all right, and you raised your hands too, friends or relatives?

S: my relatives

T: who are they?
S: 95 she: lives in the Arabian
96 and she wanted [+++] I liked
   how old she was
SS: 97 huh huh
S: 98 how [+++] it was interesting
   for me
99 but she said if you want to
   chat with me you must to be =
T: 100
   [you must be
S: 101 = more than thirteen and I
don’t know how he can understand
102 how he can err
S: 103 [he or she
   continued
T: 104 did you not continue?
S: 105 just- I: err what say my family
   and my name and my [+++]
106 and I said I am thirteen but I
can’t continued
T: 107 thirty or thirteen?
S: 108 thirteen
T: 109 one three?
S: 110 no thirty
T: 111 three zero, so thirty
S: 112 thirty
T: 113 she said you must be older
   thirty to talk to her
114 and [+++] what happened?
SS: 115 [+++]
S: 116 [+++]
T: 117 oh! yeah, some friends on-
   very interesting huh huh
S: 118 of course I didn’t [+++] very
good
119 err she was- was ill in what say?
T: 120 she has- she has psychological
   problems
121 the way you put it- said I
   found a friend I said GOOD
   WHEN HE OR SHE:
   COMING TO IRAN
SS: 122 [+++]
S: 123 he is in our company for
   working
124 she err err we must- we have a
   letter what to say?
125 we send the letter
T: 126 [correspond
   yeah, of course [+++]
S: 128 yes, and sometimes err they
   come to Iran and
T: 129 so, you have friends coming
   you think from another
   country coming into Iran, in
   Germany
130 that’s nice very good
131 any other having friends?
S: 132 [+++]
T: 133 friends
S: 134 friends and relatives
T: 135 okay?
136 Where?
S: 137 in England, my sister lives in
   England and I have a friend in
   Poland
T: 138 in Poland?
S: 139 yes

T: 140 a friend?

S: 141 yes

T: 142 how long have you known him or her?

S: 143 err I know him err

T: 144 I've known him

S: 145 I've- I have known him from when we go to err school

T: 146 since we went to school

S: 147 yes since we went to school

T: 148 I've known him since we went to school

149 and he's in Poland

150 is he Polish?

S: 151 no, he is Iranian

T: 152 oh () okay, a friend who lives- he is not from Poland

S: 153 yes

S: 154 and I usually have a chat with my computer on weekends

155 some person

T: 156 you make chat ON your computer

S: 157 they are Iranian but they live in other countries of the world like Australia, London

158 err most of them are living America

T: 159 IN America

S: 160 yes, they speak about something like our problems in Iran

S: 161 they like this matter very- a lot of

T: 162 [+] not the matter

163 CAREFUL with the usage of this word matter

164 THEY are [+] yes

S: 165 I have a friend in Cyprus

T: 166 in Cyprus () nice

S: 167 she comes from Russia and she has a little bar

168 every morning and afternoon I went there

T: 169 you go to Cyprus every morning and?

S: 170 err at the- in past

T: 171 you?

S: 172 yes

T: 173 you used to go there in the morning?

174 Oh you met her in Cyprus?

S: 175 yes

T: 176 Oh, you VISITED CYPRUS and you

S: 177 yes every morning and afternoon

T: 178 every morning and afternoon you used to go to bar

179 nice, what does she do there?

S: 180 she has her own bars

T: 181 she has her own BAR! VERY GOOD! VOW! very interesting

SS: 182 /Cyprus/
183 Cyprus
184 [+] and sorry you [++]
   people, friends in where?
185 where do you have friends
   from?
S: 186 Germany
T: 187 in Germany?
S: 188 yes
T: 189 are they German?
S: 190 no, he's French
T: 191 he's French, lives in Germany
S: 192 yes, work in Germany
T: 193 works in Germany
   194 of course he works and lives in
   Germany
S: 195 yes
T: 196 err how long have you [++]
S: 197 about one year
T: 198 all right, and here?
S: 199 I have a friend in Turkey
T: 200 In Turkey
   201 now let me ask you something
   202 how many of you guys have:
      have: actually err visited these
      friends abroad?
   203 or have been abroad for any
      reason
S: 204 [++]
T: 205 you have?
   206 and you have (.) right?
S: 207 visiting someone or?
T: 208       [just no no
   Germany
S: 209 the err for own purposes
   210 either if you: having a friend
      or just travelling for fun for
      business for pleasure whatever
   211 you, you've travelled abroad
      right?
   212 anybody else?
   213 you have, you said that
   214 where else did trav- where else
      did you go? besides Cyprus?
   215 for visit?
   216 no where?
   217 err just Cyprus
   218 only Cyprus
   219 and when was it?
   220 [last summer
   221 last summer
   222 yes so, keep it in mind
   223 how many of you people?
   224 Do you?
   225 right?
   226 but I can't continue of course
   227 I have decided to send some
      letters but we can't continue
   228 no- no, the question was, have
      you ever travelled?
   229 have you travelled to any
      country?
   230 Japan, Italy, German
   231 to Turkey
   232 Turkey okay
   233 and Mr. S you: [++]
      Germany when?
   234 [++]
   235 you remember on your trip
      quite good, err
   236 Germany too
   237 when I was fourteen years old
T: 238 the Big Ben!
239 would you remember the trip?
S: 240 yes, Netherlands
T: 241 Netherlands
242 okay when was that?
S: 243 1994
T: 244 1994
245 six years ago
246 did you like it? okay, and?
S: 247[++]
T: 248 Turkey
S: 249 once upon a time, when I was
250 a child I lived in London for
251 one year
T: 250 once upon a time
251 I [++] in the story
252 you are that old that it sounds
253 like a story to you
254 once upon a time in- in London right?
255 good(.) and you were four
256 years old?
S: 255 not four, but five, six
T: 256 do you remember anything
257 from the trip?
S: 257: for example something that
258 was interesting for me
259 I have seen in Iran that the
260 birds scare you
261 but there, for example because
262 of being child I was interested
263 in that
T: 264 aha!
S: 265 that the birds comes near that
266 err forget the name of the
clock
T: 262 the Big Ben!
S: 263 yes, and they came and they
264 sit on you
T: 264 [they come sit in your hand
265 and you feed them =
S: 265[yes- yes
T: 266 = birds don’t scare you
267 birds are not SCARED of
268 people
269 yes you- that was strange to
270 you
271 in here in our country birds
272 run away
273 they are scared of people
274 there birds are not scared
275 all right, let me ask you the
276 question
277 when you go back to the day
278 of the trip can you- can you
279 make a little time travel
280 backwards?
281 err did you go alone or did you
282 go:: with: family and friends?
283 the trip you made
S: 283[++]
T: 284 the- the- you’ve travelled a lot
285 did you travel alone?
286 Or did you travel with friends
287 and family members?
288 S: 288 also with- with my family and
289 err my friends
T: 282
283 [both, both you: alone, family
284 members, friends, okay
285 let me ask you something
286 what is it- what is important to
287 have and to take with you
288 when you go on a trip abroad!
289 overseas?
S: 285[++]
286 ah, set- get together make a list of the things that are important when you go abroad
S: 287 the most important thing is money
T: 288 thank you very much
289 take it as the first clue
290 don’t forget to take money with you, right
291 write down a list of the things that are- that YOU would take with you on a trip abroad okay? please!
(pair work) 292 okay, do you need more time to work out the list?
SS: 293 [+ + +]
S: 294 about the gun in America
295 every person can buy any guns?
T: 296 aha! that- it takes- it takes me at least fifteen minutes to try to- to- describe the whole situation
297 it’s not as: sim- it’s not a yes no answer
298 so it dif- not aa: so far I can tell you it differs from state to state
299 different states have different laws
300 and then when it comes to the question whether you are a citizen or you aren’t or you are a non-citizen, okay?
301 If you are a resident or you are a visitor?
S: 302 did you buy a gun?
T: 303 I am a collector
304 I have sixteen pieces in my collection
305 I’m a gun collector myself
S: 306 gun?
T: 307 oh, yeah
S: 308 really gun collector!
T: 309 yeah
SS: 310 huh huh huh
T: 311 yeah, but not here
312 aha: hold on! hold on! not in Iran! No!
S: 313 you didn’t kill someone?
T: 314 no sir, fortunately not huh
SS: 315 huh huh huh
T: 316 I did not kill anybody
317 err I have not killed anybody
S: 318 and animals?
T: 319 I used to haunt
320 I used to HAUNT but not anymore
321 when I was younger
S: 322 excuse me, what kind of guns are you interested in?
T: 323 aha oh! you’re making- making the question- you know- hold on to your question
324 I’ll answer it later
325 let us get to this part first
326 I’ll answer your question later on
327 err all right(.) let’s view that list you made
328 ah let’s talk about the necessities first
329 what are the most important things you take with you?
330 F!
S: 331 I think we a pass passport
T: 332 we need a passport
S: 333 we need money
T: 334 money
S: 335 visa
T: 336 of course sometimes
S: 337 some information about
T: 338 [most of the times visas, yes?
S: 339 some information about people, weather and
T: 340 [information about the country or [+++
341 you don’t carry information with you
S: 342 [no
S: 343 map
T: 344 we need a map!
S: 345 yes, we must
T: 346 but what do you say then?
347 Can’t we buy maps over there?
SS: 348 /yes/
T: 349 is it [++] taking with you- can’t you buy for example a map of the city of Los Angeles here?
S: 350 no
T: 351 you can, so let’s our ob- in the sense this is not- this is not
S: 352 [we want more information about that country before when we go there
T: 353 yeah, but because maps- I don’t think- maps are not- it’s better to go- to get maps
354 booklets
355 or booklets
356 tourist guides
357 and I think we must have the address of Iran embassy in the-
358 make sure you know the address to Iranian embassy Iranian embassy
359 Iranian embassy
360 fine, so more and more things you can take with you yes?
361 I think we are- if they are ill they take the drugs they [++]
362 aha! if they- if they are on medication
363 yes
364 to be on medication(,) right?
365 if they are on medication
366 okay they take their- their medicine with them
367 the pills
368 [and I think traveller’s check and they have to [++]
369 I missed the second, the last second, the last two items
370 ah what?
371 travellers’ check
372 travellers’ checks for money
373 they are err for example err of the- there are- they live in some country they [+ + +]

T: 374 credit card
375 if they have credit cards, good
376 more items

S: 377 camera

T: 378 camera
379 ha! don’t forget cameras good(,) yes?

S: 380 I think a dictionary bilin-

T: 381 [a dictionary a bilingual dictionary is good
382 yes they have translators these days
383 I don’t know how good they are

S: 384 gifts

T: 385 ha?

S: 386 gifts

T: 387 GIFTS
388 for what?

S: 389 for my friends

T: 390 oh! for your friends
391 souvenirs
392 very good, souvenirs is a must

SS: 393 [+ + +]

S: 394 to book a room before travel

T: 395 make hotel reservations before travelling
396 we put the assumption err as if you have a friend there
397 you have a friend or relative
398 so, you don’t have to worry about [+ + +]

S: 399 an international driving license

T: 400 international drivers’ license
401 good idea

S: 402 what’s it?
403 a notebook you have, your own computer
404 we take and change it

T: 405 in a computer?

S: 406 the own computer
407 the little computer

T: 408 oh! laptop computer
409 so laptop computer, laptop

S: 410 some software, CDs, some software, CD or software

T: 411 CD and soft- for what?

S: 412 they are very err expensive

T: 413 you mean music?

S: 414 no

T: 415 ha?

S: 416 programs

T: 417 programs
418 video- yeah, software of- err for a computer

S: 419 yeah

T: 420 you take it for your own use or a souvenir?
421 as a gift?

SS: 422 [+ + +]

T: 423 both(,) may be not, but you can if you want to
424 am I right?
425 you can take some computer software, but then I think you have to take it to the Ershsad (Ministry of Culture and
Islamic Guidance) before they inspect and label it for you

SS:
426 /it is not necessary/
T:
427 now, it's not necessary
S:
428 if they don’t see it
T:
429 but if they find out?
S:
430 yes, they should check it
T:
431 so that’s a big problem
S:
432 every cassettes and video cassette tape cassettes CDs must-
T:
433 must be inspected
S:
434 travelling ticket
435 a return ticket
T:
436 oh! yes(.) don’t forget your tickets
437 please make sure you have your tickets(.) very good
S:
438 some necessary medicine
T:
439 oh yes(.) that’s what V said
440 if you if you are on medication make-
S:
441 [+ + +]
T:
442 oh just in case
S:
443 yes
T:
444 yeah, take some necessary medicine just in case
S:
445 [+ + +]
T:
446 like what?

447 that reminds me of my- my sister when she first travelled to the States
448 she had a suitcase, this big (shows the size)
449 filled with medicine
450 and when- I said he- she just passed through the customs
451 they didn’t test the suitcase
452 I said my God! had they- had they opened the suitcase they would have never let you into the country

SS:
453 huh huh huh
T:
454 how about the drug dealers
455 old lady, 65, 70 years old at the time
456 anyway, let’s go to our task
457 imagine a friend of yours is coming to visit you in Iran
458 let’s read all the instructions

T:
459 do you go by bus?
S:
460 me?
461 no never(.) unfortunately-
T:
462 [+ + +] border for travel by bus

S:
463 I think the only border we have is Bazargan
T:
464 Bazargan
465 no never

S:
466 most of people carry err a tin of cheese with lavash (a kind of Iranian bread) and rice and
T:
467 oh! yes, don’t forget lavash and cheese
468 that’s a must

SS:
469 huh huh huh
470 if you’re travelling abroad don’t forget lavash and cheese!

S: 471 barbari! (a kind of Iranian bread)

T: 472 barbari too!

SS: 473 huh huh huh

T: 474 to make sandwiches right? 475 all right, let us let go over our very task

476 step one let’s read

477 F?

(recites the instructions)

T: 478 did you get it so far?

479 somebody, paraphrase

480 tell you what it is

481 tell you the story

482 you guys were [++]

483 obviously don’t you - you didn’t get this so listen please

SS: 484 huh huh huh

T: 485 somebody paraphrasing

S: 486 somebody is coming to visit us

or coming to our country

T: 487

[a friend of ours

S: 488 that is-

T: 489 one of our friends from UK is coming to Iran

S: 490 that he hasn’t get place and room to put his err equipment there so that-

T: 491 [in a backpack, not [++] on a suitcase

492 a backpack you know what a backpack is?

S: 493 yes

494 so that there is some- there is a list of equipment that he’s thinking about them which is more important

495 [he must bring these things with him

496 hate these things with him actually

497 hate them

498 now let us go to the box- these are the things- let’s go to the box and make sure you understand all of them

499 read- read the items

500 if you have questions ask me

S: 501 [hi:king] boots

T: 502 [hi:king] boots

S: 503 [hi:king] boots

T: 504 [hi:king] when you go hiking like this

505 hiking boots

S: 506 mountain [++]

T: 507 for mountain climbing

508 not these- these are not for mountain climbing

509 but good for going to the mountains

510 mountain climbing is err one take more like a professional item

(reviewing the box)

T: 511 did you go through the list?

512 or you still =

SS: 513 [yes

T: 514 = yeah very good

515 any questions?

S: 516 what are surfboards?
517 surfboard
What is a surfboard?
519/ you will bring surf board/
520 in your book wind surfing was one of the
(a student comes in)
521 I think you were absent
522 wind surfing is a- is a board
523 [yes I know
524 why does he want to bring a surfboard to Iran?
525 yes
526 probably he is a surfer
527 yes
528 he must be a surfer( ) right?
529 and he thinks he can use it
530 we haven’t seen
531 oh yeah if you go to the Caspian you see a lot
532 I have seen
533 we have [++]
534 being err( ) yes
535 surfboard is only a board
536 there is no sail
537 it’s only a board and all you need is a tide
538 you need tides and a ride on top of the tide
539 but in Iran
540 in Iran we too
541 but it is not very common
542 a sort of the Iran Kish
543 island
544 in Kish, you know what the sport is!
545 not very popular in Iran
546 so maybe you can- you can consider that as
547 are you sure about the laptop computer?
548 can it be [++]
549 [++] in the passport
550 ah yeah! yeah! same for the camcorder and the camera
551 [yes- yes
552 making sure they don’t sell it here
553 you can bring one
554 for yourself?
555 [++]
556 [++]
557 but they control the software
558 they control
559 they CHECK it
560 but they don’t understand it
561 [++]
562 can I have your attention for one second please?
563 those of you who have finished err and the ones who will be finishing soon
564 for every category add two more items
565 think of two more items
566 add to your categories
567 let say box one things he MUST bring to Iran
568 think of two items you think is necessary
569 vaccination hum?
570 vaccination example one
571 vaccination

S: 572 [++]

T: 573 against certain diseases
574 one of the requirements is vaccination
575 you have to vaccinate err: yourself for [++]
576 you have to get shots against diseases
577 usually this is common when you travel abroad
578 I think this is an example
579 things that you must-
580 add two more items which is not in that box, to every box okay?
581 add things he mustn’t bring
582 you mustn’t bring what? magazine-

SS: 583/alcohol/
T: 584 alcohol
S: 585 a sexual magazine
T: 586 ha?
S: 587 a sexual magazine
T: 588 sexually explicit magazine
589 don’t say sexual magazines
590 sexually explicit magazines
(individual work continues)

T: 591 listen unfortunately we’re running out of time
592 with that stage we cannot do anything about it right now
593 ah: bring the papers with you tomorrow all right?
594 and we will carry on

S: 595 what does explicit means?
T: 596 aha! sexually explicit means they show: sexual- it: has sexual contents
597 explicit, show it

S: 598 clearly
T: 599 yeah, magazines, books, films, videos, are prohibited in Iran
600 alcohol is- yes?

S: 601 sexual explicit?
T: 602 sexually explicit

S: 603 Salman Roshdi
T: 604 oh: forbidden books!
605 the Satanic Verses
606 forbidden books, yeah

S: 607 American forbidden books
T: 608 American forbidden books
609 what do you mean?

S: 610 [++]
T: 611 in each box add two more items which are [++] to the rules
(individual work continues)

T: 612 let us see what we got
613 ah can we do [++]
S: 614 yes
T: 615 in box one, it is necessary and obligatory

S: 616 passport
T: 617 yeah, let’s talk about the two items you added
S: 618 money
T: 619 money iS:: was money mentioned up there?
T: no, money?
S: Maybe haven’t, no, money?
T: Credit card is there?
S: [yes but cash
T: umbrella, hiking, cash
S: but in Iran
T: you are very right, absolutely right
you need to bring in MONEY with you
S: some dollars
T: [dollars or pounds
S: exchange
T: no
S: [+ + +]
T: no! no! it’s difficult for him to go and obtain rial
do you recommend your friend to obtain rials in England and bring it to Iran?
S: [+ + +]
T: why not?
S: it is exchange
what’s the meaning of exchange?
T: exchange is change your money
S: I think they haven’t rial in England
T: they do(,) they do have rials in England

but listen(,) be realistic
your friend is coming to Iran
he is English
do you recommend him to go and change his pounds into rial and bring it to Tehran?
no
no, what- you said the opposite
said bring some dollars and pounds
you can change here in Iran right?
so, you’re right, cash is one of the things
he must =
it is necessary
very necessary
[+ + +]
I know(,) but this guy only is thinking of bringing credit cards
am I right?
yes
[+ + +]
I know, I know, but you it put yourself into err put yourself in- the err shoes
he comes to Iran only with a credit card
now you are the friend
if he cannot spend his credit card, who has to pay?
who has to pay?
[+ + +]
you, now to protect yourself
you say it’s must, MUST BRING CASH
maybe the government is- maybe it’s not the law
the government is not forcing him to bring cash but you just to keep on the safe side
bring cash with you, good
cash is a good option
M? What else?

[++] bank in Iran err have got a unit that change the credit card err to money
I know, I know
for just to keep it on the safe side
you would recommend your friend to take some cash with you
how can- will you do that if this was for real?
cash?
you can say cash, money
cash is a good one
what else?
In box one?

insurance documents
insurance, like an insurance d::
international insurance
an in- having an inter- to insure himself and bring some insurance having no- you are: being too pessimistic
no
I know what you have in mind
you’re saying if he gets sick
I’m ending paying for this
huh

if [++] an accident and they take him to hospital if he doesn’t get admissions I have to pay for him

in that case yes
or- or is it man- is it mandatory or [obligatory]?

S: no sir(,) there is some countries in the world like [++]

S: [SOS]

yes, SOS
if he comes to our country and err he has a problem about law or about an accident or about illness they have
I know, that’s up to question
the question, is this mandatory?
Is this a must?
Or is it an option?
if you want to go to abroad you MUST be err
if you want to go abroad you must be insured
maybe, Iran has the same law
the immigration officer(,) they might ask you for insurance
so probably you can take it as a must, okay(,) thank you good
another, the address of their embassy in Iran
he must err
why?
don’t you know where British embassy is?
yes, I know
[in Ferdousi]
but may err we can’t find it
may be they-
oh no! it is not a must
I know the first item is very difficult

S:

some software

T:

because maybe he is a computer worker

S:

oh, that's not a must

you are putting assumptions

maybe he wants to work on his computer

no, must's something very strong

T:

oh, that's not a must

you are putting assumptions

maybe he wants to work on his computer

T:

our address

S:

oh yes, oh yes

don't forget don't forget to take-

our telephone number

yeah, your address and your telephone number is a must

in case you cannot find him in the airport

in case he gets lost at least he knows to sh- on a piece of paper showing the taxi driver take him to this address or make a phone-

good I take that

going to the second item, what did you guys add?

it is prohibited prohibited by law in Iran

it's a

guns/

guns

not bring any guns ha?

S:

/alcoholic drinks/

T:

alcoholic

drinks

computer sheets

ha?

some computer sheets?

some computer sheets

some computer SHEETS?

what do you mean by computer sheets?

chips

chips?

chips yes

computer chips!

it's prohibited?

yes

animals

animals

is prohibited?

/no/

is that right?

/no/

first they have to bring his card

ticket

vaccination

but he CAN bring it

it is not a must, not

if he wants to he can, but he has to ha- he has to have certain papers yes,
769 ha?

S: 770 drugs

T: 771 ah( ) drugs
  772 don’t bring any drugs, no, no

S: 773 tapes( ) cassettes( ) and video cassettes

T: 774 tapes, cassettes, video cassettes( ) excellent

S: 775 medicine

T: 776 medicine is prohibited in Iran?

SS: 777/ no /

S: 778 some of them, like drugs

S: 779 needs the Ministry of Health permit

T: 780 permit

S: 781 ministry of IRAN, from Iran

T: 782 why medicines needs permission
  783 this is personal
  784 if- if I have a heart condition and I take- I take my medicine
  785 medicine in that respect no

S: 786 my mother had bring some medicines from Germany

T: 787 that’s right( ) nobody-

S: 788 of course I think [+ + +]

T: 789 but, I- I have some tablets in my suitcase
  790 who cares?
  791 I’m not importing it!
  792 it’s for my personal use

S: 793 my grandmother
  794 some of them bring err some tablets for [+ + +]

S: 795 err but in the last time he came- she came they saw that and they said err you bring err about eight and send the err box

T: 796 ah! so it was more than one

797 no, this guy is only coming to Iran

798 yeah you’re saying- maybe- maybe saying for your uses

799 all right it’s not [+ + +]

S: 800 heroin and:

T: 801 drugs in general

802 drugs, drugs

S: 803 as we said sexual:

T: 804 [sexually explicit magazines, yes

S: 805 first hand electrical goods

T: 806 electrical goods

S: 807 for example tape, TV, came-video camera, first hand

T: 808 he has video camera

S: 809 [not first hand first hand, for sales not for-

T: 810 oh! yeah, yeah, don’t bring anything for- you must not

S: 811 TV more 21 inches forbidden

T: 812 getting very technical now

813 TVs more than 21-

814 do you think this guy is going to bring a television with him?

815 he’s coming for a visit

S: 816 for [a gift]

T: 817 for whom?
818 as a souvenir
SS: T: 845 /price of it/

819 as a souvenir
T: 846 I know! no
SS: 847 why are you say- why are you
T: [++] the friend must bring
SS: laptop computer to Iran?

820 huh
T: 848 as a gift
SS: 849 what would that do?
T: 850 because of the software
SS: 851 as a gift?
T: 852 as a gift for you?
SS: 853 [++]
T: 854 Persian-English dictionary like
SS: this electrical-
T: 855 bring a Persian(+) yeah, like a
SS: transl- good, yes
T: 856 this is a good [++] yes
SS: 857 nice to have a: dictionary of
T: 858 that's a good one
SS: any type, good
T: 859 there are software
SS: 860 they make software about the
T: maps of all of the world and
SS: can be [++]
T: 861 software about maps!
SS: 862 about maps or:
T: 863 do you really recommend your
SS: friend bring software maps to
T: Iran?
SS: 864 [++]
T: 865 how he was- he’s going to be
SS: with you
T: 866 you’re his friend
SS: 867 you wouldn’t leave him alone?
T: would you?
when you come to Iran, don't forget to let your beard and moustache grow, LONG

and chafiah (Arabian Scarf put on round the neck originally by Palestinian guerrillas)

/huh huh huh/

wear a chafiah on your shoulders

that helps a lot, coming from England yeah

he's asking for it

if he does that the guy is asking for it asking for problem

can you imagine an Englishman wearing a chafiah

if he does that, nine times no nine out of ten they're going to question him why?

They get suspicious

ah, a British guy wearing a chafiah

he's not coming from Lebanon

/huh/

and question number four

it's okay to bring this

but it is [+ + +] what?

map of Iran

we don't have to, yes

fresh fruit, canned food

ha?

canned food

don't have to bring any canned food, yes

water
916 you can buy it here

S: 917 handy

T: 918 handy!

S: 919 what is handy?

T: 920 handy camera

S: 921 he doesn’t have to

922 but maybe he wants to use his

T: 923 mo-ahead

S: 924 ha?

T: 925 he can’t use it in Iran

S: 926 ah: he can’t

T: 927 it doesn’t work

S: 928 it won’t work in Iran

T: 929 the systems are different

S: 930 systems are different

931 mobiles won’t work in Iran

T: 932 but there are some kinds of-

S: 933 [by the way when they say mobile

934 cell phones

935 I think mobile is British

T: 936 cell phone, very nice

S: 937 American?

T: 938 American, let’s go over the things,

939 now you are supposed to get

with-get into-get into work

with your partner

S: 940 you have the items right, step 4

T: 941 read over step 4

S: 942 [+ + +]

T: 943 step 4(. ) with your partner

write sentences about one or
two items in each box

explaining why and

944 and I- I insist on this part

explain why you think they belong here?

945 why should he have it in Iran?

946 why shouldn’t he have it in Iran?

947 say why?

948 example you say? you must-

949 for the first item give me an example?

S: 950 /ha has to/

T: 951 you mustn’t- you must have?

952 your passport =

S: 953 /passport/

T: 954 = ha! you must bring your passport

955 you must take your passport

956 because?

S: 957 you need an ID

T: 958 without number one(.) we need an ID-

959 without a passport they won’t LET YOU IN

S: 960 yes

T: 961 without a passport they won’t let you

962 give the reason

963 next for- for must(.) what do

you say?

964 with a different version or give me another necessary item?

S: 965 tourist visa
T: 966ah! yeah, you have to have ha?

SS: 967[++]

T: 968you have to

S: 969yes

T: 970you have to have a tourist visa =

SS: 971

/[a tourist visa/

T: 972= because without a tourist visa =

S: 973

[they don't let you in

T: 974= they don't let you in

S: 975what's a transit visa?
976if you want to change for example the airplane and stay in the airport for a:

T: 977 [he doesn't want to stay in an airport
978he wants to come and stay with you
979he is your friend
980he doesn't want to stay in the transit section

S: 981yes I know, but for example in when somebody

T: 982

[you need transit visa(,) they don't [++]
983he is British
984he can use his passport get on any-

S: 985

[oh yes! just-

T: 986the guy is British, okay?

SS: 987now, you use- so for obligations, and then for-
prohibitions
988what is it?

T: 989response of

S: 990[give me a prohibition one

T: 991a prohibition one for?

S: 992you mustn't?

SS: 993/you mustn't/

T: 994bring a gun

SS: 995[++]

T: 996because?

S: 997it's against the law

T: 998it's against the law, very good! right?
999going with ah: item three
1000it's a good idea

S: 1001/you should/can bring it/

T: 1002you should, ha?
1003you should bring?

S: 1004a laptop computer

T: 1005a laptop computer
1006you [++] say using the software for maps as if the guy is going to go through a desert

S: 1007no

T: 1008huh huh

S: 1009there are some packages

T: 1010yeah

S: 1011it's very err very much information that we haven't
1012 [we don’t have- you have a point
1013 maybe there are more information in those software than we can give him
1014 it is okay but he doesn’t have to
1015 why?
1016 it is not really necessary
S: 1017 you can’t
T: 1018 no! no!
S: 1019 umbrella, map of Iran
T: 1020 how do you say umbrellas class?
1021 (knocks on the table) how do you say that?
S: 1022 you don’t have to take umbrella with-
T: 1023 [you don’t have to take an umbrella, you can use mine
S: 1024 yeah
T: 1025 yeah? say [+ +] your backpack, you don’t- you don’t have to bring your umbrella
1026 you don’t have to take your umbrella, ha?
S: 1027 [+ +]
T: 1028 why?
1029 because the guy is travelling all the way with a backpack and you are trying to save- you are trying to help him
1030 you- I’m sure you have plenty of umbrellas at home
1031 you can spare him one(.) all right
1032 ah write some sentences

1033 two sentences- you can use the back of- you can use this here’s the back of-
(pair work)
T: 1034 all right, done?
1035 are you all done?
SS: 1036 [+ + +]
T: 1037 very nice! let us turn to- to page three
1038 let us read the grammar
1039 modals of necessity prohibition and permission
1040 there some examples examples are given
1041 somebody reads over the examples
1042 could you please?
(student reads over)
T: 1043 yeah, when they speak, these are the three types of obligations
1044 when it’s mandatory, you must have a passport, you have to right?
1045 you must have- main verb is have
1046 you have to have a passport or?
S: 1047 [+ + +]
T: 1048 you’ve got() have a passport
1049 you’ve got to means you have got- I mean you speak- you don’t say you have got to
1050 you say you’ve got to have a passport, right?
1051 you’ve got to have a passport
1052 and you never say YOU’VE HAVE
1053 you don’t say you’ve
1054 you say you have to
1055 you don’t say you’ve to have not here
1056 have is have
1057 you have to and you make the stress on that
1058 and v is pronounced like a:
1059 you have to, not you [hav: to]
1060 so these are obligations
1061 you have to have a passport
1062 explanation on that use
1063 must, have to or have got to show something is necessary and obligatory
1064 something that strongly is required often by law
1065 next item please?
S: 1066 (reads out)
T: 1067 excellent! Must not cannot
1068 and specially in this situation they write it like can- cannot together
1069 and they read it [can:ut] not can not
1070 bring fresh fruit into Iran right?
1071 cannot, you mustn’t you must not
1072 these are the negative
1073 these are the prohibitions right?
1074 you must not mustn’t or cannot or can’t to show something is prohibited, and absolutely not permitted again(.) often by law
1075 let’s go for the next item
1076 item F please?
S: (reads out)
T: 1077 use can to show something is permitted
1078 you can- permissions are- are- you use can in cases of permission
1079 you can bring your surf board
1080 you can if you want to
1081 err but if you say you should bring a credit card it’s a- you should bring your credit card means it’s a good idea
1082 something which is a good idea
1083 can is permission
1084 should good idea
1085 you should bring your camera because I think it’s a good idea to have a camera
1086 you take beautiful pictures right?
1087 and the last item?
1088 you don’t have to, right?
1089 you don’t have to
1090 what is the: usage? you don’t have to bring a surf board
1091 why?
1092 you can if you want but it’s not recommended
1093 and I don’t think he- nobody- is: is not necessary
1094 why isn’t it necessary to bring a surf board?
1095 you can always rent one
1096 it’s huge
1097 you have carried with you out in and out of the airport?
1098 you have to check it in the baggage
1099 may be they nag
1100 what is this?
1101 you have to put in the package
1102 they- they might come up with all sorts of alibis, right?
1103 ah and you can easily rent one in Iran
1104 so you don’t have to bring any to Iran
1105 this is when(.) use do not or don’t have to to show something is permitted but not necessary
1106 you can do this if you want to, okay?
1107 very well! now, any questions?
S: 1108 please spell alibi
T: 1109 I think it is with one here
1110 let me check (checks with the digital dictionary)
1111 yeah, I said they might come by with all kinds of alibi to refuse accepting it
1112 yes I'm right
1113 alibi means an excuse, all right?
1114 a strong excuse
1115 a very good excuse, alibi
S:
1116 what is the usage?
T:
1117 the usage!
1118 let us say somebody comes late to class every to every day every session, and this session come late again
1119 I say okay! B what is your alibi this time?
1120 referring to as an excuse but with a stronger sense
1121 like alibi in a court of law
1122 somebody is accused of murder
1123 if he can come up with a strong reason or good alibi to prove he was not in the scene
1124 he was not in that city
1125 he was somewhere else
1126 that's an alibi
1127 any questions with this structures?
1128 this one is used a lot in spoken English especially in American English
1129 they use, you've got to right?
1130 very nice
1131 go back to the sentences you wrote and err check to see you have- have used it correctly using these modal auxiliary
1132 if you didn't rewrite the sentences
1133 if you made mistakes rewrite it
1134 if you have made mistakes correct them
S:
1135 I should have take, when we err reduce the water for body what is( ) what is?
T:
1136 reduce the water of the body
1137 sweating?
S:
1138 err di r e h e o
1139 T:
1140 what?
S:
1141 di r h e o u
T:
1142 [+ + +]
S:
1143 what's that?
T:
1144 oh! diarrhoea! I see!
1145 you lose the body water it's diarrhoea
S:
1146 diarrhoea?
T:
1147 diarrhoea is a sickness
1148 diarrhoea is when you have to go to the bathroom
1149 you can't stop going to the bathroom
S:
1150 yeah, we-
T:
1151 diarrhoea
S:
1152 ria
T:
1153 RIA yeah but the pronunciation is diarrhoea
1154 spelling is very strange, yeah
1155 diarrhoea is a sickness, is an illness
T:
1156 done?
SS:
1157 yes
T:
1158 very good, let us read some of the sentences
1159 you are [+ + +] in the mustn't section
1160 please, H?
S:
1161 you must bring your passport with you, because they don't let you come in
T: 1162 if you don't have a passport
    yeah
1163 you must have a passport
1164 you must take your passport
1165 take- you must take your passport because without it they won't let you in, very good! yes?

S: 1166 you have to bring some money because I don't have much money to [+ + +]

T: 1167 huh you have to bring some money

S: 1168 because I don't have much money to pay for you

T: 1169 I don't have ANY to pay you, yeah
1170 you have to take some money
1171 take is a good phrase
1172 you must take some money with you, because I don't have any
1173 I was hoping you could lend some, yes?

S: 1174 you have to have a tourist visa because they wouldn't let you come in

T: 1175 you have to have a tourist visa, exactly!
1176 they- because they wouldn't let you come in without one
1177 WITHOUT a tourist visa

S: 1178 you must have a passport to be allowed to inter

T: 1179 you must have a passport to be allowed to enter
1180 yeah(,) more formal way

S: 1181 you must take your return airline ticket because without it when you are going to

T: 1182 you must read that again
1183 you must take your return airline ticket because without it when you are going to come back

S: 1184 when you are returning you're going to come back
1185 is- he's not coming back HE IS GOING BACK

T: 1186 yeah, it make you problems

S: 1187 because without it- it: [+ + +] you problem- problem when you are going back
1188 when you are going back

T: 1189 when can you use should? do err

S: 1190 yes

T: 1191 it's a must
1192 you must have a return ticket

S: 1193 but you don't have your ticket you can bought it in Iran

T: 1194 you can buy it in Iran, yeah
1195 but again(,) he or she would be losing a lot of money
1196 it's a good idea to- he must have it, yes?

S: 1197 you must take my address and my telephone number because if for any reason we can't find each other in the airport =

T: 1198 [at the airport

S: 1199 = you can find me easily

T: 1200 can easily find me EASILY
S: 1201 can we say without it you don't have any references to find me?

T: 1202 without- without it you don't have any references to find me
1203 yeah, any references
1204 you're okay
1205 you don't speak like this
1206 you are not writing ah because this is like a-
1207 I don't know, you write for a court of law like a reference to find somebody, yeah?

S: 1208 if we can't find each other or if we couldn't find each other?

T: 1209 yeah, depending on- on what is the probability
1210 if you and I rearrange to meet somewhere in the middle of the desert I say if we can't find each other because the probability is very high
1211 but at Mehrabad airport if we couldn't find each other
1212 because most of the time 99% of the time I won't- we won't miss each other
1213 in the middle of the desert, if you can't find me
1214 it's difficult() almost very possible, couldn't when this is- the probability is low, very nice

S: 1215 [+ + +]

T: 1216 let us go- did you have all musts? yes?
1217 have to have got to

S: 1218 yes

T: 1219 use have got to one

S: 1220 you don't have got to take

T: 1221 a:h that's a don't have to have
1222 see this is only for must or [+ + +] must have to, got to obligations
1223 don't is- you don't have to-
1224 we can't use them in the negative
1225 in the negative it's you don't have to, right?

S: 1226 yes

T: 1227 is- don't have to, there is no other versions go with the musts

S: 1228 with must?

T: 1229 aha

S: 1230 we don't must take a map of Iran

SS: 1231 /huh//you must not//you mustn't/

T: 1232 you must not have a map of Iran because?

S: 1233 because err if you don't take the map you can't ask about something that you don't know from people of Iran

T: 1234 you said you must not have a map

S: 1235 yes, you must not have a map

T: 1236 it's illegal to have a map of Iran!

S: 1237 you don't have to

T: 1238 you don't have to
1239 this is you don't have to yeah?

S: 1240 yes
1241 we want to say you don't have to but you said maybe with must

T: 1242 no! no! I was saying- I was saying do you have- since we were dealing with the first item which is must
1243 I said have- did you have a must sentence
1244 if not it's all right
1245 you don't have any must
1246 that's your- you don't have to
1247 I was talking about the first category
1248 the first category box one musts and then mustn'ts
1249 are we done with musts? yes?

S: 1250 I think they are part of four

T: 1251 no! no! part one

S: 1252 you mustn't bring tapes and CDs because it's against the law

T: 1253 you are going with mustn't
1254 you mustn't bring tapes and CDs because it's against the law, yes?

S: 1255 in another structure, you mustn't bring tapes and CDs because of being against the law

T: 1256 because of- all right, wrong!
1257 you can’t use it
1258 you can not use this structure, because it is against the law
1259 you have to change the structure in verb-
1260 you have to go for a version being against the law, you cannot or you must not bring any tapes
1261 being against the law
1262 you start your sentence like that, being against the law

S: comma(,) you must not bring any tapes

T: 1263 they are against the law
1264 yeah, because they are against the law

S: 1265 and because it is a forbidden

T: 1266 it is forbidden, IT IS!

S: 1267 with a or without a

T: 1268 forbidden is an adjective
1269 because it is forbidden
1270 it is wrong
1271 it is bad
1272 forbidden is an adjective, fine
1273 more mustn’t, yes?

S: 1274 you mustn’t take alcoholic drinks to Iran because we have an Islamic government and it’s forbidden

T: 1275 it is forbidden
1276 you mustn’t take alcoholic drinks WITH you
1277 you mustn’t take or you mustn’t bring
1278 bring here is a good verb
1279 you mustn’t bring alcoholic drinks into Iran
1280 because it is, because what?

S: 1281 because we have a Islamic government

T: 1282 an Islamic Government, an Islamic government
1283 and it is [against the law

S: 1284 [it is forbidden

T: 1285 it is cheaper

S: 1286 can we say?

T: 1287 it is cheaper in Iran!
1288 huh huh huh get out of here!  SS:  1289 is it?

SS:  1290 /yes/

S:  1291 can we say don't bring alcoholic drinks?

T:  1292 don't bring  1293 yeah, of course  1294 you are not using- this is err this is an imperative statement  1295 you are ordering the person  1296 mustn't is a mustn't, you are not ordering,  1297 but although you can say that(,) don't bring  

S:  1298 you mustn't have drugs because you will be arrested as an smuggler  

T:  1299 yeah, you mustn't have drugs, because you will be arrested as a smuggler  1300 [+ ++] for smuggling drugs  1301 this guy is not a smuggler  

S:  1302 you mustn't bring drugs because we haven't- we have it here as much as you want  

T:  1303 aha! there- it is?  1304 you don't have to it's not  1305 you mustn't you don't have to bring drugs  

SS:  1306 huh huh huh  

T:  1307 are you sure Sohail?

S:  1308 we can hear all the day  

T:  1309 what do you know about the drug of choices

S:  1310 he knows it very well  

T:  1311 you don't- he knows it very well  1312 huh all right go on  

382
S: 1340 we can’t
S: 1341 you can use mine
T: 1342 you can use mine
1343 I have an extra one
SS: 1344 /you can use mine/
T: 1345 you can use mine
1346 very good(,) yes?
S: 1347 you don’t have to bring a
map of Iran because you can
find it easily
T: 1348 you can find it easily in Iran
S: 1349 you don’t have to bring your
cell phone because you can’t
use it here
T: 1350 you don’t have to
S: 1351 because it doesn’t work from
[+ + +]
S: 1352 you don’t have your cell
phone because you can’t use it in
Iran
T: 1353 you don’t have to BRING-
you don’t have to take your
cell phone
1354 ah not! it’s a should =
SS: 1355 [you
should/]
T: 1356 you shouldn’t take your cell
phone because
1357 negative- negative is
suggested
1358 you shouldn’t take your cell
phone because it is- it doesn’t
work in Iran
1359 ah we don’t have to
S: 1360 is it right?
T: 1361 it’s all right
1362 you say you don’t have to
S: 1363 you don’t have to bring some
books and magazines because
you can find English books in
Iran
T: 1364 bravo!
1365 you don’t have to bring
books or magazines
1366 you’ll find them in Iran
1367 nice(,) excellent
1368 let us move on
1369 is it correct?
1370 you don’t have to bring a surf
board because in Iran we don’t
have ocean
T: 1371 huh huh you don’t have to
bring your surf board
1372 there is a better reason
1373 if that is the case you say-
1374 [what
is [+ + +] we don’t have the
same as
1375 [we do
1376 in the south of Iran in the
south people surf
1377 because most of the err the
sea that they have connected
with the:
1378 [oceans
1379
1380 they have big waves, but that
does not mean you cannot surf
1381 maybe he is not a
professional surfer
1382 let us move to exercise 3
1383 work with the partner, okay?
1384 somebody reads this
1385 B?
(student reads out)
these are the musts, must have to, have got to, good
go to the items the err with your partner, go over these items and see which ones are obligatory(.) to get the drivers’ license
let put a check mark next to the- to the err mandatory ones

1390 there are some obligatories that err here didn’t mention

T:
1391 which is not mentioned
1392 add them
1393 add those to your list
(pair work)

T:
1394 did you pick the mandatory ones? yes?
1395 did you check the ones that are necessary?
1396 items that are necessary?

S:
1397 [+ + +]

T:
1398 let us see which items you got

SS:
1399 [+ + +]

T:
1400 hold on! hold on please!
1401 let- are you doing your non-dones?
1402 okay(.) hold on, wait
1403 I thought everybody it was

S:
1404 medical examinations?

T:
1405 medical examinations
1406 probably, yeah I think it is mandatory
1407 I think you need a medical exam, don’t we?

SS:
1408 /no//yes/

T:
1409 you and I must not comment on this
1410 we got our drivers’ license many years ago

let us ask the young ones

T:
1412 /yes/

S:
1413 hold on! hold on! time, time

1414 [+ + +] is one of my biggest problems
1415 I have been failed for four times

T:
1416 and the reason was?

S:
1417 and the reason,
1418 I don’t know sometimes they say that the starting was

T:
1419 [no! no! we’re talking about medical exam

SS:
1420 /yes//oh, yes we have it/

S:
1421 visit some people like medical exam

T:
1422 medical exam, to ta- to take a medical exam, before the test

SS:
1423 [+ + +]

T:
1424 say to you to run
1425 when you ran they say sit and stand again
1426 so that err

T:
1427 to make sure that you have strong legs

S:
1428 and shake your hands

T:
1429 shake your hands
1430 what’s-

S:
1431 [no, sit down and stand up, if you can do it err err

T:
1432 not a serious one
1433 sort of medical exam

S:
1434 sometimes it needed
T: 1435 sometimes it is necessary
S: 1436 it is necessary for someone
who err err
T: 1437 somebody who?
S: 1438 who(.) seemed to use drugs
T: 1439 who takes drugs or looks like
a drug addict, all right
S: 1440 [+ + +] someone I know
1441 because if he find someone
speak loudly they give you
some paper to give
examination about your
alkoholi (drunken) or err your
about your drugs
1442 the same as this(.) if you
don’t anything-
T: 1443 if you’re nice to them they
are nice to you
SS: 1444 huh huh
S: 1445 some people have artificial
legs but they have driver
license
T: 1446 I know(.) like me I have a
disability but I do have a
drivers’ license
1447 I have- this is a disability but
I went for a medical test
S: 1448 [+ + +]
T: 1449 unfortunately
S: 1450 I mean
T: 1451 [the club I was- I was [+ + +]
the motorcycle club
1452 I was within the States but
for a long time, to err to re-
renew my- my license my
license to ride a motorcycle
1453 they couldn’t
S: 1454 in some cities like
khoramabad, I have heard that
they get to a drug test
1455 are you addict to it or not
T: 1456 whether you are addict or
not [+ + +] all right
1457 let us see what are those
items
1458 are musts err tick mark the
musts
1459 number one, what is the
item?
1460 make the sentence
T: 1461 /you must know/
SS: 1462 you must know how to drive
1463 obviously number one
1464 you must know how to drive
1465 what is the next item?
SS: 1466 /you must practice before the
test/
T: 1467 is that a must?
SS: 1468 /yes/no/
T: 1469 nobody is forcing you
1470 you can if you want
1471 you- it’s not a must
S: 1472 you can if you want
T: 1473 if you don’t err practice
before the test you can’t
S: 1474 [necessity
T: 1475 why?
1476 maybe I can
1477 nobody is forcing you
1478 nobody is forcing you
1479 is anybody putting a gun to
your head GO PRACTICE?
S: 1480 no but [+ + +]
T: 1481 then must is not a good
choice
be careful! must is not a good choice
let’s talk, yeah?

it’s why to be necessary after Nowrooz (New Year) holiday to have about 30 hours in a driving, I don’t know Amoozeshgah (Persian word for driving school)

oh, one of the schools-

yes

but it says before the test right? the day before the test

[+ + +]

I know no! no! this is not but they have it means the day before the test is that a must?

no, what is the other item?

take an eye test
take an eye test /yes//we must take an test/
yeah(.) can we use other forms?

you have to

you have to? /take an eye test/
take an eye test another form?

you’ve got to take an eye test
you’ve got to take an eye test err but eye test is very- so must is a a very strong- you have- must is a good err good choice

what about the next item?

you must take written test/

you must take a written test next item?

/no//you have to/

before examination you have to have medical examination next item?

/no you haven’t/

I know they say- you guys- you guys are saying different things I don’t know

it’s physical not

but they say

[yeah, physical exam and medical exam are- medical exam-]
but some of you guys are saying they send you for a drug test so, it could be I don’t know, it is- it is vague

it’s a controversy

controversy- not controversial

it’s a vague issue

it might [+ + +] it might not

you have to a birth certificate
1530 you have to have a birth certificate or an ID
1531 have to, next item?
SS: 1532 / you have pass a driving test
T: 1533 you have to pass a driving test,
1534 next item?
SS: 1535 /no/
T: 1536 no, pass your diploma is not mandatory?
SS: 1537 /no/
T: 1538 so what to say?
SS: 1539 /you don’t have to/
T: 1540 you don’t have to have a high school diploma
1541 but you don’t have to have a diploma, right?
S: 1542 no
S: 1543 yes
S: 1544 you should have one of these
1545 you should have a diploma
1546 you should hav- studying in university, or pass the military service
S: 1547 yes
S: 1548 no
SS: 1549 it’s not necessary
S: 1550 if you can write
1551 S: 1552 you should have military service or you-
S: 1553 [must [+ + +]
S: 1554 most of the drivers can not read or write
T: 1555 read or write
1556 is that right?
1557 I don’t know you guys know much better than I do
S: 1558 if you are a male you must have a discharge certificate =
T: 1559 [discharge certificate
T: 1560 = or an exemption card
S: 1561 or an exemption card from military service
1562 that’s the only requirement?
S: 1563 no
T: 1564 do you have to have a high school diploma?
SS: 1565 /no/
S: 1566 so, you don’t have to have a high school diploma
S: 1567 is it obligatory in other countries or [+ + +]
T: 1568 and also
1569 in America?
1570 you know what- but they have drivers’ education in the high school
1571 they call it Drivers’ Ed.
1572 e d for education and err err students before one of they-
1573 they are taught as one of the subjects in high school
1574 they are- they can drive under 16
1575 they take it while they are in high school
1576 they call it a Drivers’ Ed. and most people, I don’t- but I don’t know the law
1577 I don’t know whether it is mandatory or not
1578 I think it is, if I am not mistaken.
S: 1579 [+ + +]
T: 1580 age limit is 15 or 16, yeah
S: 1581 Iran is 18
T: 1582 in Iran is 18, all right
1583 err what is the next item?
1584 own a car
SS: 1585 /no/
T: 1586 you have not
1587 let go back again on that
1588 have an international drivers’ license, it’s a must
SS: 1589 /not/
T: 1590 not
1591 so let us go back on the items which were not obligatory
1592 see what kind of- which of these modals we can use to make sentences with them
1593 example( ) wise practice before the test
S: 1594 we don’t have to
T: 1595 you don’t have to practice
SS: 1596 /you should//you should not/
T: 1597 you should practice
S: 1598 excuse me, if UK drivers sit in right and in Iran sit in left and I think err we have to err
T: 1599 [this is not your friend-]
1600 your friend- he came, he left he said goodbye(.) he thanked you a lot
1601 thank you very much
1602 I really enjoyed a wonderful stay in Iran
1603 this is not you
1604 no, this is a different story
1605 this has nothing to do with your friend
1606 obviously people coming from Great Britain to Iran, and vice versa
1607 I think it is terrible to drive fine
1608 so in the second one you don’t have to practice before the test
1609 but you can if you want to
1610 it’s a good suggestion, good suggestion
1611 you should practice before the test
1612 next one, take an eye test was mandatory
1613 take a written test was mandatory
1614 have medical examination I did not- I did not- I didn’t know
1615 somebody- some say yes some say-
1616 so that’s still remaining to majority
1617 have a passport or birth certificate for the must
1618 passing a driving test first a must
1619 have a high school diploma-
SS: 1620 no
T: 1621 we don’t have to have- own a car
SS: 1622 you don’t have to
T: 1623 you don’t have to own a car here
1624 actually they won’t let you drive your car
1625 am I right?
1626 you can take your own car on the day of the test
1627 you have to use their car on the day of the test

388
1628 and the last one, have an international drivers' license?

SS: 1629 /no/
T: 1630 you don't have to, it won't help you
S: 1631 international drivers' license you wouldn't have passed the exam
T: 1632 in Iran?
S: 1633 yes
T: 1634 if you have a drivers' international drivers' license?
S: 1635 you wouldn't
T: 1636 [you won't 1637 you won't pass the exam?
S: 1638 you wouldn't have
S: 1639 you wouldn't have to pass the exam
S: 1640 it's not necessary
T: 1641 ha! It (. ) if you =
S: 1642 [you wouldn't have to pass
T: 1643 = you wouldn't have to- take the- you- you- you wouldn't have to take the exams, right?
S: 1644 do they- drivers' international drivers'
S: 1645 yes
T: 1646 they just give you one?
S: 1647 yes
T: 1648 I didn't know that
SS: 1649 /no/
S: 1650 if you have a drivers' license of Iran they give you an international, but if you have an international, you must do err
T: 1651 [I think you must take a test no?
S: 1652 yes
T: 1653 I have to disagree(.) no sir! we are [+ ++] I don't think so
S: 1654 [+ +]
T: 1655 let us say, I have an international drivers'- class!
T: 1656 can I have your attention please?
S: 1657 Let us say I have an international drivers' license issued in the state of California and I bring that international drivers' license in Iran with me
T: 1658 I take it to the DNV here
T: 1659 whatever they call it, Edarah Rahnamaii vah Ranandaghi
T: 1660 they call it DNV, Department of Motor Vehicles
T: 1661 I take it to the DNV in Iran and I say, okay(.) this is my international drivers' license
S: 1662 giving me an Iranian license(.) would they?
T: 1663 [drivers' license from the States, they don't accept
S: 1664 they won't accept it
T: 1665 if you have an international drivers' so that it is international
S: 1666 yeah
T: 1667 don't have to
1668 [++]

T: 1669 we can drive temporarily with an international drivers’ license
1670 you can drive temporarily not for ever

S: 1671 to have driving license from the other country, drivers’ license not international

T: 1672 not international

S: 1673 and I go to DMV

T: 1674 in Iran?

S: 1675 in Iran, as to change to Iranian, is possible takes just eye test necessary just eye test

T: 1677 I’m sorry sir!
1678 in my case they did not accept it

S: 1679 because you just from United States- United States

T: 1680 [is not accepted

S: 1681 and, and

T: 1682 England is not accepted

S: 1683 this is I think [+ +] visa it’s eyes to eyes but to say it?

T: 1684 eye against eye!

S: 1685 yes

T: 1686 huh huh oh! an eye for an eye

S: 1687 yes because-

T: 1688 [this is an eye for an eye treatment, yes

S: 1689 for example England doesn’t accept all driving license
1690 they do say is not accepted

T: 1691 makes sense- it makes sense an eye for an eye treatment, I see
1692 all right
1693 the last task for tonight
1694 do you know how to get a drivers’ license in the United Kingdom?

S: 1695 our guest knows

T: 1696 he knows, but we don’t
1697 our job is to get together, and yes make a guess work in groups of three
1698 get into groups of three
1699 do you know how to get a drivers’ license in the United kingdom?
1700 what do you have- guess?
1701 what do you have to do to get a license there?
1702 Class! let me have your attention for a second
1703 just a second
1704 I’m very sorry, this is the last
1705 do you know how to get a drivers’ license in the United Kingdom?

S: 1706 no

T: 1707 what do you- yeah, you don’t know
1708 now, you have to make some guesses
1709 what do you have to do to get a license there?
1710 in what ways is it different here in Iran compared to one there?
1711 talk to your partner
1712 find out what he knows
1713 should be ready to report

S: 1714 we should guess?
Mr A: you give us a right or wrong err corrections

S: you have to know how to drive

T: you must take an eye test?

A: [++]

T: the procedure is different, but you have to have, you have to take a test

S: of course in our DNV in Iran

T: DNV in Iran

S: yes, we have err again that system

T: that’s right

S: the time has changed Mr A now

T: we- they do the same way

S: when you go- not- they don’t ask you to read the license plate of the car but they have these E signs

T: somebody asks you, left right, up, down, and you go [++]

S: you don’t go to a GP to check, to examine you, okay

T: you must own car

S: you must own your car

T: you must- you can

S: [do you think that is right?]

T: you can if you have

S: if you don’t have your own?

T: you can go and buy a car

S: go and buy a car huh, Mr A again
1756[+ + +]

T: 1757 how much?

A: 1758 I don’t know

T: 1759 they [+ + +] you can rent their cars

S: 1760 you have to have a high school diploma

T: 1761 Mr A?

A: 1762 no

T: 1763 you have to educate in Driving Schools(,) for example for a special time

S: 1764 you have to have- I think that’s what B said.
T5 (1ST Session)

T: 1 shall we get started?

SS: 2 yes

T: 3 what?
4 so are you up to date?
5 You are fine?
6 You are all right?

SS: 7 [++]

T: 8 what?

S: 9 [++] later

T: 10 you arrived late
11 you were late for lessons ha?
12 hay you are a new student ha?
13 We didn’t have you here yesterday

S: 14 now I couldn’t make it

T: 15 you couldn’t make it
16 why couldn’t you make it?

S: 17 I had a class in my university

T: 18 you had a class in your university?

S: 19 yes

T: 20 what was your class?

S: 21 statics

T: 22 statics
23 statics?

S: 24 yes

T: 25 ha you mean mechanics statics?

S: 26 yes yes

T: 27 but you were talking about statistics while it was statics ha?

S: 28 yes

T: 29 all right anybody else is new?
30 You’re new ha?
31 And you too?
32 so Mr M?

S: 33 yes

T: 34 here you are Mr: G
35 you were absent yesterday ha?
36 Could you brief us about yourself?
37 introduce yourself to the class

S: 38 I am Reza
39 I am 7 years old
40 man daghighan namidonam (I don’t know the exact word) civil engineering

T: 41 you are a civil engineer
42 and you work anywhere?

S: 43 yes

T: 44 where do you work?

S: 45 a company

T: 46 a company
47 private company?

S: 48 what?

T: 49 do you work for a private company?

S: 50 semi- private

T: 51 all right and we were asking questions about people’s salaries here
52 what about your salary?
53 is it satisfactory?

S: 54 what salary?

T: 55 your salary
56 your salary ha?

S: 57 yes

T: 58 so what?
59 How much is that?
60 is it secret?

S: 393
yes
T:
yes?
all right you wanna keep your secret
it doesn’t matter
you can remain silent huh huh
so anything else about yourself?
S:
nothing
T:
nothing special
what about your last teacher?
who was your last teacher?
Who was your last teacher’s rank?
and what was your final score?
S:
A minus
T:
A minus
Mr R?
He is absent?
S:
yes
T:
Mr K?
S:
A?
T:
Is that you?
say us about yourself
you were not here yesterday?
S:
yes
T:
why not?
S:
I stay at school I haven’t [++]
T:
theoretical?
S:
exam
T:
right how old are you?
S:
sixteen
T:
sixteen years old
and what are you studying at high school?
S:
we have err physic class
T:
physics?
S:
yes
T:
math and physics
S:
physics
T:
I am not talking about your classes
yesterday
err your field of study
your major
what’s that?
S:
(err our teacher haven’t time at school
err)
T:
ok listen I am not talking about your
yesterday classes ha?
Asking about your major
your field of study
S:
in high school I study mathematics
T:
mathematics
what school did you go to?
S:
what?
T:
what school do you go to?
S:
Alammah Tabatabii
T:
Alammah Tabatabii
where is it?
S:
Ghisha
T:
Ghisha
all right who was your last teacher?
S:
Mr V
T:
Mr V
what was your final score?
your score?
S:
can’t see it
T:
122 you haven’t taken it yet?
S: 123 no
T: 124 so how how did take this class without
S: [I see my name in the list
T: 125 in my list?
S: 126 yes
T: 127 all right
128 but before registering to this term you
129 should check whether you have passed
or
S: 1291 can’t check it
T: 130 whether you’re passed or failed ha?
S: 131 no I couldn’t
T: 132 so are you sure you’ve passed? or not?
S: 133 yes but err
T: 134 this doesn’t mean that you are passed
135 but your name in my list doesn’t
necessarily mean that you’re passed
136 actually the examination
S: 136[+ ++] 137 ha?
T: 138 I will see my last err score
S: 139 all right check the letter
140 Me Z
141 He is absent?
SS: 142 yes
T: 143 Mr F you are new to this class?
S: 144 yes
T: 145 tell us about yourself
S: 146 my name is V
147 and I am 20 years old
148 I am a university student and study mechanical engineering and
T: 149 chemical engineering
S: 150 yes I love sports
T: 151 you love sports
152 what sports do you like?
S: 153 everything
T: 154 any kind of sport?
S: 155I like most of the sports basketball
T: 156 how do you make time [+ ++] with
the sports
S: 157 I just go to the university two days a
week
T: 158 two days a week?
S: 159 yes
T: 160 what university?
S: 161 Tehran centre
T: 162 Azad?
S: 163 yes
T: 164 Azad university?
S: 165 central branch
T: 166 good and you work anywhere ha?
S: 167 no
T: 168 err your last teacher?
S: 169 this is the first time I come to this
institute
T: 170 so where did study before?
171 I mean where do you study English before?
172 nowhere

173 nowhere

174 you just studied English on your own?

175 no I was abroad

176 aha how many years?

177 for a years

178 for?

179 one year

180 one year only

181 [++ +]

182 what state

183 Washington

184 Washington DC

185 not Washington DC Washington state

186 ha

187 Seattle

188 that's it

189 so why did you come back?

190 my mum and dad is broke

191 that come back

192 yeah

193 not recently but several years ago

194 eight years ago

195 so Mr F

196 err you are not related to the clergies are you?

197 what?

198 you are not related to the clergies ha?

199 by clergies what do you mean?

200 oh you know clergy man?

201 no idea

202 you don’t know clergy man?

203 no

204 well actually (.) in Iran we call them Mollahs

205 no I am not

206 you are actually F but

207 you know

208 not at all

209 oh why not?

210 All right Mr B?

211 yes

212 Mr K?

213 yes

214 here you are

215 you haven’t found a crown princess yesterday?

216 huh

217 ha?

218 aha you said you had a girl friend ha?

219 All right her name was a secret (.) as far as I remember

220 a secret

221 it was honestly a secret or you didn’t tell us?

222 [++ +]

223 [++ +] necessary

224 ok and what about you sir?

225 Ali N
T: 226 Mr
S: 227 N
228 you were absent yesterday and you arrived the class late
S: 229 yes
T: 230 how are you today?
S: 231 fine
T: 232 you’re fine?
233 are you sure?
234 certain?
S: 235 not exactly
T: 236 how?
237 so you give us uncertain answers ha?
S: 238 yes
T: 239 tell us about yourself
S: 240 I am 20 years old
241 and I am a student in the university err
T: 242 what do you study?
S: 243 civil engineering
244 err I work too
T: 245 where?
246 Where do you work?
S: 247 in Jam Jam
T: 248 so [++] ha?
S: 249 yeah
T: 250 who?
251 There is another?
252 he is absent? Ok
S: 253 and err (.) about what?
T: 254 how is life?
S: 255 err about fiancé?
T: 256 you have a fiancé?
S: 257 yeah
T: 258 so we would like a sweet ha? Huh
S: 259 [++]
T: 260 anything?
261 so err what university did you go to?
S: 262 Azad Karaj
T: 263 ha Azad university
264 ok and your teacher last time
265 who was he?
S: 266 Mr E
T: 267 Mr. E
268 your final score?
S: 269 err
T: 270 you haven’t taken it yet
271 make sure that you will take your final score
272 thank you very much
273 so I guess I’ve called all your names yes?
274 for those who were absent actually yesterday we started working
275 what did we say about arrangements?
276 Will you?
277 what do we say?
278 what do you mean make arrangements arrange?
S: 279 organise something for somebody for [++]
T: 280 organise something
S: 281 to make programmes or do something
T: 282 progRAMME
S: 283 yes
T: 397
284 also put things in order ha?
285 Or to make plans for something ha?
286 Arrange

S: 287 arrange
T: 288 arrange to do something
289 arrange for somebody to do something
290 arrange something with someone else right?
291 also we talked about arrange marriages right?

S: 292 going to and will
T: 293 going to and will
do you use will exactly for making arrangements?

S: 295 [+ + +]
T: 296 we can use going to ha?
297 Such as what?

S: 298 I'm going to go somewhere
T: 299 you gonna go somewhere?
300 I'm going to go shopping

S: 301 I'm going shopping
T: 302 I'm going shopping ha?

S: 303 both of them are correct?
T: 304 both of them are correct
305 yes that's it
306 British people have a tendency to use err present continuous instead of saying going to go
307 they reverse go and come when they’re using going to all right?
308 for go and for come they have the tendency to use present continuous
309 now saying going to go
310 say I'm doing shopping right?
311 but it's not incorrect as a matter of fact to use I am going to go or I'm going to come
312 they're correct
313 err we also talk about future certainty

314 what about that?
315 how do we express our ideas in future certainty?

S: 316 [+ + +]
T: 317 will ha?
318 We use will
319 and we also listened to a kind of dialogue
320 a conversation between miss Apobe
321 miss Apobe a secretary ha?
322 And?

S: 323 a man
T: 324 how was this man ha?
325 now today-
326 do you please open your books on page 66

S: 327 is it correct that American people use the will and going to in the same positions
328 and it is not err different for them err which they have some planning
329 for example when you are err these err going to do something you can you make
330 we are going to do this for err
331 they might tell that we will do this and there is not difference for them
332 is it correct?

T: 333 why not?
334 You know it sounds like that
335 as we discussed yesterday we use to be going to when we are [+ + +]
336 I could remember we have already planned
337 and we have arranged to do something in the future ha?
338 For example when you go shopping I told you yesterday
339 we did not?
340 we discussed that
341 for example we have have already decided what you're going to buy
342 you have made a shopping list ha?
343 So now if somebody asks you what you gonna do?
344 What are you doing?
345 You say I’m going shopping
346 I am going to buy a kilo of meat for example
347 for example I’m going to buy two kilos of sugar a packet of cigarettes and lab lab lab
348 so you’ve already decided
349 you have written a note right?
350 you have arranged to buy these things right?
351 now for example if somebody asks you- yeah?

S: 352 I think err is going to be going to do something has background err
T: 353 yes what I said you have already decided ha?
354 That’s the background ha?
355 On the other hand now have a shopping list in your hands
356 you’re going shopping right?
357 and you’re going to buy those written things
358 now somebody you wife for example asks you we’ve run out of sugar
359 we’ve run out of something else
360 for example we are in need of some:

S: 361 salt
T: 362 some what?

S: 363 salt
T: 364 salt?
365 alright probably salt
366 would you get some salt for the house
367 now that you are at it
368 now that you are going shopping ha?
369 So you say all right
370 I’ll get some salt too right?
371 I’ll buy some salt too
372 I will
373 why because you suddenly decide
374 at the moment of speech you decide ha?
375 You suddenly start err decide about something you’re going to do in the future ha?

376 You would do actually in the future right?
377 so you use will right?
378 I will do that
379 I will also buy that for you
380 well for example she would ask you now that you’re going out will you post this letter for me?
381 Will you post this letter for me ha?
382 This doesn’t mean err actually decided before this doesn’t mean arranged
383 this doesn’t mean actually [+] ha?
384 Some would say now that you are at it please do this
385 you say all right
386 I’ll do that
387 I’ll do that too
388 I’ll post this for you
389 I’ll post your letter
390 so we use will when
391 what?
392 when we haven’t decided ha?
393 We haven’t already decided what we are going to do yah?
394 Now open your books at page 66
395 practice pair work
396 imagine imagine [+] and you need you need to meet your partner
397 sometime over the weekend to discuss some work
398 you understand?

S: 399 [+ + +]
T: 400 what do you mean?
401 what do you mean?

S: 402 which one?
T: 403 what are you saying?

S: 404 imagine it’s a Friday and I arrange a meeting
T: 405 aha so you want to?

S: 406 arrange a meeting
T: 407 you want to arrange a meeting
you want to discuss something that your partner ha? or probably your colleague or your classmate ha?

You have something to discuss with your partner ha?

over the weekend

well actually the weekend in Iran is what?

SS:

Friday

T:

we can say Thursdays and Fridays in general right?

so actually now we should suppose that it’s Thursday or it’s Wednesday ha?

Suppose it’s Wednesday and you want to see your partner

you have some certain things to discuss with your partner or you classmate over the weekend

on Thursday at [+ +] right?

you mean this: err why the it has over the weekend

because two weeks

yeah answered it

today it was Wednesday

Tuesday or Wednes- in the weekend?

actually we do not say in the weekend

the preposition for weekend is in British English

is at American English? (.) on

then could we use over because one day?

um actually the weekend is generally refer err generally refer to err the end of the week

in other countries generally two days

so we say we can say over the weekend ok?

now err first fill in your own diary right?

what times have you [+ +] for the weekend ha?

The things you have already decided to do during the weekend over the weekend ha?

The thing is that you had in your mind before to do during the weekend ha?

Write them down ok?

and also decide when you are free

what free time you have over the weekend ha?

Now here it is written on Sunday but actually we are talking Thursday and Friday in Iran

Thursday and Friday so morning afternoon evening

fill in your own diary

the things you have already decided to do

do it on your own

(individual work)

have you made a list of what to do during the weekend yeah?

ok now when you’re ready it means now ha?

Stop writing ha?

Stop writing

when you’re ready discuss your plans together

I mean with your partner in pairs ha?

You go to work in pairs

you go to work in pairs

two by two right?

discuss with your partner and see whether it is possible to meet what?

Because you want to discuss something

you have to arrange the time to meet

and if it is possible arrange a time and a place to see each other right?

go on

be careful you’re going to use what?

going to do

why?

it is planned for

it is planned for

(individual work continues)
461 ok guys (clapping hands)
462 let’s [+] [+]
463 what about you?
464 can you do that?

S:
465 yes
T:
466 when did you decide to meet?
S:
467 Saturday afternoon
T:
468 Saturday afternoon
469 What time?
S:
470 half past twelve
T:
471 half past twelve
472 and where?
S:
473 near Mellat
T:
474 near Mellat Park?
475 Near Mellat Park or in Mellat Park?
S:
476 no near Mellat Park
T:
477 where exactly?
478 where do you mean by Mellat Park?
S:
479 after the big door
T:
480 the big door?
S1:
481 yes
S2:
482 they have taken in the fences
T:
483 what?
S:
484 they have taken the fences of the Mellat
T:
485 the fences? taken away fences?
S:
486 yes
T:
487 all right what about you?
S:
488 Friday morning
T:
489 Friday?

S:
490 Friday morning
T:
491 where?
S:
492 post office in Tajrish
T:
493 right what about you?
S:
494 obviously we didn’t came to an arrangement about the place we are going to gather
T:
495 you didn’t come up with any arrangements?
496 why not?
S:
497 we had arrangements
498 we talk about discussed about this problems at Phone
T:
499 aha you decided to( ) talk it over a phone?
S:
500 we cannot meet each other because we couldn’t match our free time
T:
501 so( ) that was the problem
502 you’re going to discuss?
S:
503 you have to use own phone
504 I don’t have Phone
T:
505 suppose you have your own phone
506 what would happen?
S:
507 we most probably we are going to go to the tennis in Englab Friday morning
T:
508 together?
S:
509 yes
T:
510 when
S:
511 at- at nine
T:
512 [become a hobby ha?
S:
513 yes at 9
maybe we go to a [++] of my friend
you know his friend have some time
T: 516
[sorry to your?
S: 517 err my friend's home
T: 518 your friend's house
S: 519 maybe my friend's house or his
friend's house
T: 520 ah your friend's house
521 err is it a girl or a boy or what?
S: 522 [no a boy
T: 523 why- why did you decide to go to your
friend's house to discuss it at phone?
S: 524 when arrive I have some fun
T: 525 you go out for fun?
526 what kind of fun?
527 You cannot have that fun outside?
S: 528 no
T: 529 right
S: 530 err at(,) 7 o'clock(,) err on Friday
morning
T: 531 at 7 o'clock?
S: 532 yes
T: 533 fine and?
S: 534 err go Darband Square
T: 535 Darband Square?
S: 536 yes
T: 537 are you going out to have [++]
S: 538 yes?
T: 539 altogether?
S: 540 why not?
T: 541 then why not?
S: 542 except me
T: 543 except you?
544 why not?
SS: 545 huh huh
T: 546 huh so what are going to do ha?
S: 547 his girl friend prevent him
T: 548 he could take his girl friend cannot he?
S: 549 I think it doesn't matter
T: 550 it doesn't matter?
S: 551 I will take care of her join err
T: 552 [to join the
group
553 so why don't you take her out
S: 554 it's dangerous
555 they come to get them
T: 556 ha?
557 The soldiers all right
558 I hope not huh
559 oh it doesn't matter
560 err now the pair work exercise
561 the dialogue
562 hay where are going to your holiday
this year?
563 We haven't decided yet
564 we might go to Greece
565 or we might go to Italy right?
566 err are we talking about the present
tense?
SS: 567/no//future/
T: 568 is speaker B sure?
569 Where he's going?
SS: 570 no
T: 571 where is going? Ha?
572 He’s not?
S: 573 no
T: 574 he’s not sure
S: 575 yes
T: 576 how could we show or how could he actually show that he was not sure where to go
SS: 577 might
T: 578 might ha?
579 Said might(.) we haven’t decided yet
580 we might go to Greece or we might go to Italy right?
581 so repeat the sentences once together (repetition)
T: 582 now work in pairs
583 ask B the questions
584 and so B you haven’t made up your mind Ha?
585 You are uncertain
586 you are not sure
587 so use the cues A B C D right?
588 together go on (pair work)
T: 589 fortnight
590 what does it mean?
SS: 591 two weeks
T: 592 in two weeks time
593 it’s a British word
594 it means two weeks time
595 two weeks two weeks right?
596 14 days right?
597 now we’re going to listen to your dialogues A
S1: 598 Are you going to travel?
S2: 599 I haven’t decided yet
600 I might fly or I might go be car
T: 601 B
S1: 602 err in which place are you going to stay?
S2: 603 I haven’t decided yet
604 I might go to Hotel or I might
T: 605 [hoTEL]
S2: 606 hoTEL
607 and I might rent house
T: 608 ha?
609 WHERE are you going to stay?
610 where? ha?
611 where are you going to stay?
612 I might stay in a hotel or I might rent a house
613 I might rent a(.) house
614 err what about you guys C?
S: 615 [+ + +]
T: 616 what?
S: 617 [+ + +]
T: 618 how long are going to stay?
S: 619 I haven’t we haven’t decided yet
T: 620 [decided
S: 621 we might err we might stay for a week or we might stay for a fortnight
T: 622 we might stay for a fortnight
623 and: K?
S: 624 err when are you come back?
T: 625 when?
S: 626 I will come back
T: 627 are you going to come back or where(.) when are coming back?
S: 628 where are you going to go?
T: 629 what do you say?  
S: 630 when are you going to go?  
T: 631 ha when are you going to go  
632 when are you going?  
633 Or for the other way round  
634 coming back  
635 when are going to come back or when  
are you coming back  
636 when are you coming back whatever  
637 go on  
S: 638 I am not sure  
639 I might come in July or in  
T: 640 [come back  
S: 641 come back in July or err I might come  
back August  
T: 642 in August  
643 E?  
S: 644 who are going with you?  
S: 645 err I am  
S: 646 who are going in with you?  
T: 647 no who are going to who are going  
with?  
648 who are you going with? Ha?  
S: 649 [++]  
T: 650 who is going with you?  
S: 651 yes  
T: 652 who are you going with?  
S: 653 I am at school with my friends or [++]  
T: 654 thank you very much that’s good  
655 now [++]  
S: (reads out)  
T: 656 the first sentence?  
SS: 657 I’m having lunch  
T: 658 [I’m having lunch with?]  
SS: 659 Bob  
T: 660 with Bob today  
661 the arrangement is in my diary  
662 it means that in my diary planned for it  
in my diary  
663 I have arranged for it  
664 so in the second sentence she’s getting  
married in the spring  
665 a date has been fixed and a trip  
perhaps booked ok  
666 so() translate these sentences into  
Farsi  
667 what are going to do today?  
SS: 668 emshab chekar mikoni? (What are you  
doing tonight?)  
T: 669 ok I’m having a meal with Alice  
SS: 670 [++]  
T: 671 embashab ba Alice ghaza mikhoram  
ha? (Tonight, I am eating dinner with  
Alice)  
S: 672 [++]  
T: 673 adventure  
674 adventure is a noun ha?  
675 and the adjective  
676 adventurous() adventurous  
677 and have you heard of  
678 there are two actually novels for the  
young adults  
679 err written by: written by whom?  
S: 680 Jull Vern  
T: 681 no, but I’ll give you the name  
682 you will give the name of the author  
683 the writer of the adventures of Hackle  
Berry Fin  
684 the adventures of Tom Sire  
685 who is the writer?
You know the writer? Ha?

S: forgot it

T: forgot the name

anybody else?

S: one of them is written by Charles Dickens

T: no, the writer was an American

Mark Twain ha?

Mark twain was the writer of what?

the adventures of Hackle Berry Fin

and the adventures of Tom Sire

the next word heart-headed

what does it mean?

S: very serious

T: very serious

what else?

S: genius

T: genius

oh no it doesn’t mean necessarily

it doesn’t mean genius

no can’t say genius

someone who is serious in his job ha?

err realistic and serious

somebody who is dealing actually with

facts rather than emotions ha?

somebody who doesn’t let err his

emotions and internal feelings err

control him while he is going to decide

about important things

or while he is studying something ha?

scientists are generally heart-headed

people ha? yeah?

so she- at least at the word they are

heart-headed people ha?

S:

serious and realistic?

T:

yeah?

serious and realistic

heart-headed

(repetition)

what part of speech is this word?

heart-headed

S:

noun

T:

adjective or noun?

SS:

adjective

T:

so adjective heart-headed person

we said ha? heart-headed scientist

heart-headed

examples?

give me examples?

S:

adventurer

T:

adventurer huh

adventurers are not like heart-headed

S:

do we have hard-hearted? huh

T:

hard?

Huh I don’t know

I haven’t heard of that

stone-hearted huh all right

his girl- you are talking about his girl

friend

SS:

huh huh huh

T:

huh

S:

everything is about his girl friend

T:

during next session actually we’re
going to deal with your girl friends ha?

he has only one but you have many

ha?

SS:

huh huh huh

S:

it might surprise you that I I am lying

T:

you lied

oh it doesn’t matter huh

actually we need a subject to talk about

err now it doesn’t matter whether it

was imaginary or it was realistic ha?

who was a real character

it was unreal?
S: 747 yes real
SS: 748 huh huh huh
S: 749 better is everything around it
T: 750 ha?
S: 751 it's better everything around it
T: 752 it's better ah ah?
S: 753 it's better everything be around this subject

T: 754 [this subject?]
755 You prefer this subject
756 ok the other word is summon (repetition)

T: 757 have you heard this word?
758 summon, it's a noun(.) and also a verb
759 anybody?
760 Any ideas?
S: 761 it's a special inviting
T: 762 um officially?
S: 763 officially
T: 764 [inviting someone to a conference to a meeting to:
S: 765 call someone
T: 766 to call somebody
767 ask him or ask her to come over to a meeting to a conference to a court of law right?
768 summon that's it
769 so summon is to officially order to come to a meeting to a court I mean to a court of law
770 or actually summon somebody to do something
771 also we can order somebody to do something also right?

772 err sometimes you are summoned to the court to the court of law
773 have you been who has recently been summoned to the court?
S: 774 I went to the court because of the Monkarat huh (anti-social behaviour)
T: 775 no you were not summoned from the-
776 you were not ordered or you were not asked to go to the court ha?
S: 777 [we were pushed to Monkarat
T: 778 they arrested you
779 all right no we are not talking about that err
780 summon someone to the court
781 to ge- get [+] err visa maybe editors ha?
S: 782 the people who take part in Berlin conferences
T: 783 [the people who had taken part in Berlin conference
784 they were summoned to the court ha?
785 that's it
786 also you can summon a meeting
787 you can summon a conference
788 and ask me- people to come and organise a meeting or a conference or whatever fine
789 err also(.) any of you have seen people(.) some sort of people to gather round
790 to get together in a certain room at night
791 actually you turn off the lights
792 then they try to ask the ghosts huh
S: 793 [++]
T: 794 ha?
795 all right the spirits actually
796 err to [++] themselves to move objects(.) what?
797 What do you do?
SS:
798 summon [++]

T: 799 [summon the spirits ha?
800 you can summon spirits
801 you can summon ghosts right?
802 all right we talked about the NASA
yesterday didn’t we?
803 what did NASA stand for?
804 what does NASA stand for?
S: 805 National:
S: 806 Aeronautics and space national
T: 807 national?
808 Aeronautics and Space Administration
809 it’s located in Iran?
SS: 810 yes huh in Tehran
T: 811 huh in?
SS: 812 United States
T: 813 [the United States
814 and do you work for NASA?
SS: 815 huh
T: 816 you know physics ha?
817 all right repeat this word diameter
(repetition)
T: 818 well suppose this is a circle
819 of course it’s not exactly a good circle
but this is called actually what?
SS: 820 diameter
T: 821 diameter
822 this one ha
823 this is a diameter
824 err actually it’s a li- it’s a line which
connects two?
S: 825 two points
T: 826 two points on a circle
827 and it also passes?
SS: 828 from the centre
I have no knowledge of math all right.

The half of the diameter is? radius? radius. I'll write it for you (writes on the board).

ok the next word is what? Probably you know this word. What does spin mean?

move around err of err something around of err itself around of err. An imaginary line that some thing rounds.

huh all these definitions are technical yeah.

[no using [++]]

yes first of all it's a rotating [+++] it's for example when we are talking about the [++] when it rotates it err

[itself]

It spins. It spins yeah?

something moving around itself right? spin is a? verb ha? spin so to turn round very quickly ha? to spin someone's head spinning ha?

when do you drunk

when you drink water ha?

when you're drunk your head gets spinning.

what else do we have here?

excuse me what's the meaning of err gigantic?

gigantic repeat (repetition) what does it mean? gigantic
gigantic very big huge
titanic also means? gigantic very big huge
titanic the name of that film you watched
giant is come from
giant gigantic come from that word
enthusiast means? we've have it before
very interested about something
to be interested
to be attracted actually err

very interested about something
to be interested
to be attracted actually err

you're an actually enthusiast right err
to be: enthuse err well we have to enthuse someone
as a verb enthuse
917 we have enthusiastic
918 enthusiastic is an adjective
919 if something is very enthusiastic
920 makes you?
S: enthusiastic
T: enthusiastic all right
921 you could be an enthusiast means a
922 person who is very much indeed
923 interested in doing something in
924 studying something
925 is called he is I don’t know err for
926 example he is a math enthusiast
927 he loves mathematics
928 he is interested in mathematics
929 he is an enthusiast right?
930 enthusiastic is the adjective
931 err means very interesting
932 enthusiastic right?
933 enthusiast interested
934 enthusiastic interesting
S: bent?
935 Excuse me bent?
936 What is the meaning of bent?
937 Bent as a verb?
938 Bent bent bend
S: [+ + +]
T: ha?
940 to bend something ha?
941 to bend something you bend
942 you bow like this
943 you bend your?
944 back
945 the other word that we have iS: what?
S: [+ + +]
T: sorry?
S: non-astronauts
T: non-astronauts
950 the person who is not an astronaut
951 the person who is not an astronaut is
called non-astronaut
S: he is asking about astronaut
T: astronaut?
S: a person who go to moon
T: the people who travel into space
957 the scientist actually not ordinary
958 people right
959 the scientists who travel into the outer
960 space right?
961 in a space shuttle
962 in a space craft right?
963 they’re called astronauts
964 and they study what?
965 the space the other planets the stars
966 astronomy right?
967 it’s called not astrology
968 astronomy right?
969 they’re called astronauts
970 all right where was that?
971 where was the word astronaut
S: the first paragraph
T: now repeat this word lunar (repetition)
973 what does it mean?
974 lunar
S: related to moon
T: related to the moon
977 yes [+ + +] lunar
978 lunar what?
979 Gravity ha?
980 what’s gravity?
981 We go to the earth’s gravity
982 here too
983 err the other that you may not know is
984 module ha?
985 do you know the meaning of module
986 repeat (repetition)
987 what does this mean?
988 it’s a noun
989 lunar was an adjective ha?
S: opposite of [mi:nor]
T: 990 module?
S: 991 yes
T: 992 minor you mean?
S: 993 minor
T: 994 oh major major is the opposite of minor
995 module what does it mean?
S: 996 module special part
997 we have this
T: 998 no
S: 999 specially for computer hard ware
1000 any part of it we called a module
T: 1001 yeah actually the separate components right? of a machine of a system
1002 they might be in a way called modules
1003 The reason we have a module here
1004 so in this text module is a part of a space craft
1005 is a part of a spaceship right?
1006 which can separate itself from the main body of the space craft
1007 from the main body of the spaceships to be used for other certain purposes in the space right?
1008 or to even join the space station out there right?
1009 it could be used for a: actually doing some space research
1010 anything like that
1011 it is called what module
1012 so it’s part of the spaceship
1013 part of the spacecraft
1014 after it is launched into the space it can separate itself from the main body
1015 from the main part right?
1016 and that is used for other certain purposes
1017 it could be used for err for satellites ha?
1018 so(,) they are called modules right?
1019 err another meaning of module is one of the units of a course which could be studied separately
1020 in course of study right?
1021 a part of a course of stu- course of study which should be studied separately right? is called module [+ +]
1022 and(,) fill this words little bit
1023 we have to move on a bit faster
1024 terrestrial (repetition)
1025 what is it terrestrial?
SS: 1026 /religion/
T: 1027 first of all it’s an adjective ha?
1028 it is related to what?
S: 1029 [+ +]
T: 1030 to the earth
1031 [+] actually in Latin and also in French we have what?
1032 In French actually we say terr
1033 Terr means the earth right?
1034 la ter means the earth
1035 also tre- refers t what?
1036 Tress- refers to earth terrestrial
1037 means anything which is related to? The earth
1038 terrestrial we have terrestrial broadcasting
1039 terrestrial broadcasting
1040 then you know broadcasting?
SS: 1041 yes
T: 1042 the programmes mean TV programmes
1043 radio programmes
1044 while the: actually broadcast err from the earth without using the satellites is called terrestrial broadcasting right?
1045 as an example we have terrestrial broadcasting or terrestrial channels
1046 opposite of satellite channels ha?
1047 opposite of satellite channels
1048 now terrestrial means anything that is connected to the earth
1049 opposite of terrestrial is what?
1050 Non-terrestrial
1051 non-terrestrial anything which is not actually related to the earth
1052 it’s related to the space
1053 it’s related to any other object or planet outside of the earth
1054 outside of the actually the atmosphere of the earth right?
1055 in the space non-terrestrial ha? (repetition)
T:
1056 well actually non-terrestrial would mean celestial
1057 right(.) heavenly
1058 so it’s the opposite of what? non-terrestrial
1059 err yes?
S:
1060 does it mean exactly the non-terrestrial?
T:
1061 which non-terrestrial?
S:
1062 terrestrial
T:
1063 well it’s- one of the-
1064 did I tell you about this or not?
1065 Err synonyms are not exactly the same
1066 there are some certain differences between them
1067 celestial means heavenly
1068 heavenly means related to the skies
1069 to the outer space
1070 it’s called celestial
1071 you have celestial objects right?
1072 now(.) you know gravity don’t you?
1073 repeat (repetition)
1074 what does it mean?
S:
1075 the force that attracts everything to the centre of the earth
T:
1076 that’s it
1077 who discovered gravity force for the first time?
S:
1078 Newton
T:
1079 Newton
1080 does only earth have gravity?
SS:
1081 no
T:
1082 so what?
S:
1083 everything has gravity
T:
1084 everything?
S:
1085 everything
T:
1086 everything huh you know shall-
1087 for example the moon also has its own gravity
1088 but its gravity in comparison to that of the earth is?
S:
1089 less than the earth
T:
1090 very tiny
1091 very small ha?
1092 the next word
1093 repeat deteriorate (repetition)
1094 what does it mean?
S:
1095 destroy
T:
1096 so become worse ha?
1097 to become worse ha?
1098 bad worse
1099 to become worse
1100 to develop into a bad [+ + +] situation right?
1101 it’s to deteriorate things
1102 deteriorated(.) things became worse ha?
1103 err the economic situation deteriorated after the revolution ha?
1104 the Iranian economy deteriorated ha?
1105 deteriorated
1106 it’s a?
1107 it’s a?
1108 what part of speech?
S:
1109 word
T:
1110 it’s a word
1111 of course it’s a word
1112 so we say deteriorated –ed ha?
1113 but what’s the opposite of deteriorate?
1114 So to become better
to become good better
S:
1116 [+ + +]
T:
1117 err develop have the sense of that
1118 but we could say ameliorate
1119 ameliorate
1120 now repeat this word colony
1121 it’s a?
1122 what is it?
1123 what part of speech is it?
SS:
1124 it’s a noun
T:
1125 so what do we mean?
1126 colony?
S:
1127 immigrates
T:
1128 no
S:
1129 large amount of germs
T:
1130 sort of means ha?
S:
1131 a group of people that come in a
place
1132 in a certain place
T:
1133 listen now one meaning of colony is a
country
1134 is a piece of land
1135 [+ + +] but actually it’s the country
itself
1136 err it’s the country that is under the
political control of more powerful
countries of other countries ha?
1137 for example India for years it was a
colony
1138 colony of?
1139 The UK
1140 England ha?
1141 colony any of- many of colonies in
the whole of the world ha?
1142 specially during the
S:
[+ + +]
T:
1143 ha?
S:
1144 Portugal had many colonies

1145 Portugal?
1146 Portugal had colonies
1147 well colony (repetition)
1148 in this sense ha?
1149 in this sense a country is a colony
1150 it’s under the influence of another
country
1151 it’s controlled by another country
1152 in this sense we have what?
1153 Colonisation ha?
1154 colonisation (repetition)
1155 all right to colonise ha?
1156 but now here has it this meaning?
S:
1157 no
T:
1158 no what’s meaning here?
1159 listen another meaning colony
1160 a group of people who live in a
colony

412
T6 (3rd Session)

T:
1 okay, ah for this special task activity at the beginning I will recommend not to write down anything on these handouts ok!
2 because they are going to be collected again
3 don't write anything on this
4 this is an activity for a short time
5 do this and then [+ + +]
6 so please do not write on these handouts

S:
7 we must do this

T:
8 on piece of on a separate piece of paper all right

S:
9 [+ + +]

T:
10 don't you like it

S:
11 [+ + +]

T:
12 no?

S:
13 very hot

T:
14 is very hot!
15 Don't you think you're overdressed?

S:
16 no

T:
17 okay have you ever been to a foreign country?
18 Yes!
19 which country?

S:
20 [+ + +]

T:
21 oh you have been in a foreign country good
22 have you ever been to England?
23 No
24 what what do you usually need to take with yourself when you go to a foreign country?
25 what are the things that are necessary to take?

S:
26 passport visa

T:
27 ah passport!

S:
28 [+ + +]

T:
29 look at the items in the box in the first box page two
30 which ones, usually [+ + +] of that country?
31 Which ones are necessary?

S:
32 passport

T:
33 passport

S:
34 a return airline ticket

T:
35 a return ticket
36 is it necessary?

S:
37 a map of Iran

T:
38 a map of that country

SS:
39 tourist visa

T:
40 err a tourist visa
41 any kind of visa

SS:
42 /books//a map of Iran/

T:
43 a map of the country that you are going to yes!
44 Err what else?
45 An umbrella?

S:
46 a return airline

T:
47 sorry?

S:
48 a return airline ticket

T:
49 return airline ticket is necessary!

S:
50 a credit card

T:
51 credit card!
it's so safe

S: 52 it's so safe
T: 53 um
S: 54 it is not necessary
T: 55 it is not necessary
56 the other ones?
S: 57 [++]
T: 58 which ones do you

SS: 59 [++]
T: 60 which ones do you think is good to
take with (. ) with yourselves?
S: 61 credit card
T: 62 credit card!
S: 63 yes
S: 64 tapes and CDs
T: 65 tapes and CDs!
S: 66 life is music
T: 67 life is music ha
68 what happened to your court?
S: 69 he conceded
T: 70 oh you are exonerated!
S: 71 yes
T: 72 ok!
73 man likes to make crime
S: 74 if God wants
T: 75 okay God willing
76 you say God willing
S: 77 will

T: 78 God willing
S: 79 willing?
T: 80 yes
S: 81 [++] makes crime forbidding?
T: 82 not forbidden
S: 83 forbidden?
T: 84 okay, err well let's go to this part
85 step one
86 a friend of yours from the UK is
planning a short vacation in Iran
87 as he is a UK citizen he will have to
deal with immigration and customs
when he enters Iran
88 he doesn't have much room to pack
a lot of things because he's planning
to travel err with just a: bag pack
89 here are the things he's thinking of
taking with him
90 you know bag pack?

SS: 90 /yes/
T: 91 some kind of bag you carry on your
back
92 now okay I would like you to work
in pairs and think which ones err he
is advised to take with him ok!
93 two by two please
(pair work)

S: 94 we must write it?
T: 95 no sorry you are not allowed to mark
on this book
96 on separate piece of paper you can
write
S: 97 [++]
T: 98 yes you can write them and also talk
with your friend
S: 99 talk it better or write it?
100 doesn’t matter if you don’t want to forget err to not to forget
(pair work)

101 okay now you noticed that some of these items are necessary yes! And obligatory

102 some of them are prohibited by law
103 according to Iranian laws you cannot bring them to the country yes!
104 But some of things you think that it is a good idea to bring
105 about the others you think it’s okay to bring these but it isn’t really necessary

106 err go to the next table
107 you can see four different categories see!
108 I would like you to discuss them and say which items goes into which category
109 which one of these items goes into which of these categories
110 go ahead two by two
(pair work)

112 we must write these or not necessary?

113 err sorry not to forget the items I would like you to write the results down on a piece of paper
114 not on these handout sheets
(pair work continued)

115 okay now let’s err let’s talk about them one by one
116 a passport which category?

117 /first//one/

118 the first one
119 what is your sentence exactly
120 you must!

SS: 121 /you must take a passport/
T: 122 you must take a passport into Iran
123 agree?

S: 124 you must England [+ + +]
T: 125 huh we are talking about Iran
126 so why don’t you ag- why do you disagree with this

S: 127 I agree with this
T: 128 you agree with this
129 but you objected ok!
130 err about a surf board?

SS: 131 /not necessary/
T: 132 surf board for surfing on the water in the sea

S: 133 sailing
T: 134 to do surfing
S: 135 it isn’t necessary
T: 136 which category?

SS: 137 /four/
T: 138 um you don’t!
139 you don’t have to!

SS: 140 [+ + +]
T: 141 take a surf board
S: 142 with yourself
T: 143 yes what about fresh fruit?

SS: 144 [+ + +]
T: 145 is it?
S: 146 yes
T: 147 is it allowed by law?
S: 148 some countries
T:
149 [no we are talking about Iran]
S: 150 tapes and CDs
T: 151 no sorry we are talking about fresh fruits
S: 152 it is prohibited by law
153 fruit and trees
T: 154 um it is prohibited?
S: 155 yes
T: 156 so which category does it go to?
SS: 157/four/two/
T: 158 it is two
159 you must not! Yes!
160 You must not take fresh fruit into Iran
SS: 161 [fresh fruit into Iran
T: 162 what about an international drivers’ license?
S: 163 four
S: 164 two
T: 165 international drivers’ license
SS: 166 [/three/three/it’s a good idea/
T: 167 what is your sentence exactly
S: 168 you can take
T: 169 [you should take this or you should take an international driving license with you
170 what about books about Iran?
S: 171 show obligation I think
T: 172 I will talk about that
173 should it means it is a good idea
174 just suggestion and mild obligation
175 err books about Iran?
SS: 176/three/
T: 177 again you should TAKE!
178 you should take!
S: 179 but four
SS: 180[+++
T: 181 so which category does it belong to?
SS: 182 [/four/four/
T: 183 four!
184 You don’t have to take?
S: 185/no/
T: 186 you don’t have if you like
187 you can do if you don’t like
188 it’s don’t have
SS: 190/yes it’s a good idea/
S: 191 books about Iran is we have lots of books about Iran
192 not a necessary
193 I think maps or anything we don’t need
T: 194 sorry number two is
S: 195 [+++
T: 196 sorry category three says it is a good idea to bring this
SS: 197[+++]
but there is one [++]

[study this in our house and err after that we have to go to Iran

for example we have [++]

Iran has a mountains has a lot of [++]

/about ancient/

besides there are lots of books about Iran available here in Iran

why was he take it to Iran?

it's a good idea

it's a good idea

it's not necessary

[++]

so you believe that goes to category three

we have good books in Farsi in Persian but we don't have books in English

err this [++] English and he he doesn’t know anything about book in Persian

so let's put it in the third category
do you agree?

yes

you should take books

[we can take it in the third category

and I think in the fourth category

both of them

okay what about a return airline ticket?

I think it is necessary

four

necessary why?

you can buy your ticket in Iran

no

three

you don’t have to?

it depends

because a tourist is limited for us

we cannot be in Iran for always for every time we want

oh yes it is for a limited period of time?

yes

so you believe that it must go to which category?

three

first

oh first you must take this with you!

a return airline ticket!

Without that you can enter Iran yes?

yes

so you can buy it here

you can find here

but for coming into Iran it is not necessary

it is not necessary

[++]


244 do you agree to put it in the third category?

S: 245 yes

S: 246 no

T: 247 yes or not?

SS: 248 /yes//no/

T: 249 the first one is necessary and obligatory

SS: 250 [+ + +]

T: 251 let me ask you this

252 suppose that you have not got a return ticket in your hands with yourself don’t they allow you to enter Iran?

S: 253 yes they don’t allow you into Iran

T: 254 who said this?

S: 255 if you have a tourist visa you have to have a

T: 256 [return ticket as well

SS: 257 yes

S: 258 if you have a tourist visa

T: 259 oh really?

SS: 260 yes

T: 261 so we must put it in the first one if if you [+ + +]

SS: 262 yes

T: 263 so you must put it in this

S: 264 by low or by law

T: 265 by law huh

SS: 266 huh

T: 267 you must take a return airline ticket with you

268 what about a map of Iran?

SS: 269 /three//a good idea/

T: 270 it’s a good idea

271 what is your sentence exactly?

SS: 272 you should take the map of Iran with you

T: 273 [you should take a map of Iran with you

274 err a credit card

275 a laptop computer?

SS: 276 /two//forbidden/four/

T: 277 is it forbidden?

S: 278 no it depends

T: 279 it depends on what?

S: 280 it depends on the use of this

281 if you had used before

T: 282 [if it is second hand

S: 283 second hand you can enter it to Iran

284 but no for example you take it from the [+ + +] for selling

285 no this forbidden

T: 286 yes, of course it’s for personal use

287 do you know [+ + +]

S: 288 [+ + +]

S: 289 number four

T: 290 number four!
291 they don’t believe us
T: 292 you don’t have to take this?
S: 293 [++]
T: 294 I believe that
295 what’s the necessity of a laptop here?
SS: 296 /it’s not necessary/
T: 297 I don’t think that it is so much helpful
298 you can send it to the last category part four
299 you don’t have to take a laptop computer
300 next one a credit card?
S: 301 three
S: 302 you don’t have to
S: 303 we can’t buy anything
T: 304 credit card!
305 if you bring it here it’s will of no use just limited [++] accepted
S: 306 [++]
T: 307 yes you can can send it to the fourth one
308 you don’t have to take a credit card
309 what about the tourist visa?
SS: 310 /it is necessary/
T: 311 you say you?
312 you?
S: 313 first
T: 314 must you can say
SS: 315 [++]
T: 316 you can say you must take a tourist visa with you
317 or you have to take a tourist visa with you
318 photographs of his hometown?
SS: 319 /four//it is not necessary/
T: 320 of course it depends on the photos
SS: 321 huh huh huh
S: 322 yes of course
T: 323 sometimes it is part two yes!
324 but usually it is part four
325 it goes to the last one
326 you don’t have to take!
327 photographs of your hometown yes!
SS: (no response)
T: 328 next one tapes and CDs?
SS: 329 /four/
T: 330 it is it is forbidden yeah!
S: 331 yeah
S: 332 no personality [++]
T: 333 legally they are allowed?
S: 334 [++]
T: 335 they are ethically they are allowed
S: 336 [it depends we can hide them]
T: 337 [yes let’s ask the judge over here
SS: 338 huh huh huh
T: 339 sorry is it legal or not?
S: 340 yes it’s prohibited
T: it is prohibited by law really? so the judge is 
S: [+ + +]
T: [talking talking law is here]
S: the mouth of law
S: you must pay it the fine
T: oh you said if you pay you can bring it? 
S: yes
T: really so it is not prohibited
S: everything is related to money
T: they don't take it away from you
S: everything dependent to money
S: depends on the [+ +] for CD
T: [contents] [oh really]
S: for example about the sexual for example sexual [+ + +]
T: it is forbidden yes
357 the ones that are intervene the rules they cannot be taken here
358 so I think err one wants to bring tapes and CDs here he must put it under the (.) the second category
359 do you agree? 
S: no
T: what is it? you?
S: you must not
T: [you must not?]
SS: /take tapes and CDs/
T: [tapes and CDs or you can say you?]
S: have to
T: can not or you can't take tapes and CDs into Iran err the other one is an umbrella which category?
SS: /four/
T: four!
374 three
T: umbrella to Iran!
S: depends on the season
S: in winter in Iran we need umbrella
T: how many days a year you need umbrella in this country?
380 even in winter you don't have
S: which part of Iran!
S: yes it depends on which part of Iran
S: Tehran
T: in the middle of the desert
SS: huh
S: perhaps he needs that
T: really?
S: it's desert
T: do you carry one with yourself?
that is why they arrest you in the street
you know that?
S:
those for [++]
I think it's useful
T:
umbrella the dark ones as shades yes!
Shadows
S:
shadows makes it [++]
T:
[okay but I think it is better to put it in the!]
S:
number four
T:
number four!
S:
I think it is
T:
you can say you don't have to?
you don't have to take an umbrella
SS:
[have to take an umbrella]
T:
and?
there is another structure you can use here
what is it?
you needn't take an umbrella yes!
Err
S:
sorry?
You needn't?
T:
you needn't
S:
don't need or needn't?
T:
sorry needn't is a modal verb
it is not a main verb
this is different from that need you know
Need can be used in two different ways

one as a modal verb and the one as a main verb
here it is a modal verb
so you say?
you?
S:
[needn't]
T:
err needn't take an umbrella with you
hiking boots?
SS:
/four/
T:
three
SS:
/why three?/
T:
why four?
S:
the tourist doesn't come here for walking
he's coming absolutely I think for [++] not for walking
T:
ah it is not for travelling in nature
and whatever yeah which category do you agree it goes in?
SS:
/four/
S:
three I think
T:
yes of course
usually countries run a kind of cultural err tour yeah!
so usually they are visiting the sightsseeing places
I agree with you at this
the last category?
You don't have to take hiking boots with you
of course you know that
for some of them there isn't a neat answer
now can you add two items to each one of these categories
two more items and write them err in the from of a complete sentence
can you do it?
you’ve got three minutes to do it two by two about two other items (pair work)

T: okay, well let see for the first one 447 for the first category?

S: you must take money with you

T: ah you must: have enough money with you

SS: [+ + +]

T: of course they accept dollar in Iran

SS: /yeah//yes//huh/

T: you can pay in dollars

S: you can bring with yourself dollars or other

T: but no

S: you must take enough money

T: you must take enough Iranian currency okay

SS: [no response]

T: another one?

T: is it necessity?

S: no

S: yes for example about err

T: [without that they don’t let you enter Iran? Ha?] 471

SS: [no response]

T: another one?

T: you must know the international err

SS: [sorry complete sentence please]

T: you?

S: women must take

T: women?

S: must take a scarf with her

T: must take Islamic wearing with her

SS: [sorry you please?]

T: ladies must take Islamic wearing with them

SS: [no response]

T: another one

S: the judge?

SS: haven’t

T: no other categories as well

SS: huh

T: two three four

S: yes, you must not take wine with you

T: ah you mustn’t take alcoholic drinks with you yes good

S: and jewels

T: jewels!
S: 491 gold rings
T: 492 the personal ones?
S: 493 no no
T: 494 we are talking about business
495 we talk about the things with
yourself
496 okay what else?
497 You?
S: 498 you don’t have to take warmer
clothes
T: 499 you don’t have to take warm clothes
with you!
S: 500 perfume
T: 501 depends on the season of course
S: 502 perfume
T: 503 perfume!
S: 504 good idea perfume
T: 505 is it good or- is it necessary or not?
S: 506 it is not necessary
T: 507 so what do you say?
508 you don’t have to?
S: 509 [you must not take
this
T: 510 [sorry when you say you must not
when you say you mustn’t it is a
prohibition
511 it is a negative obligation you see!
512 So you cannot say [+ + +]
513 you can say you don’t have to yes!
514 you mean that you don’t have to
bring perfumes with you because
they are available here yes!
S: 515 yes
T: 516 okay you please?
S: 517 you don’t have to take certification
T: 518 you don’t have to have what?
519 What is certification?
S: 520 you don’t have to certification
T: 521 what is it?
522 what do you mean?
S: 523 iden-
T: 524 identification?
S: 525 yes
T: 526 you have to have identification with
your visa
SS: 527
527 [/ID card/]
T: 528 sorry passport is a kind of
identification
529 but if you mean your ID card is
different
530 you don’t have to
531 you- you don’t have to have your ID
card
532 you mean this one?
S: 533 yes
T: 534 this one is not necessary because it is
not [+ + +]
535 okay you please?
S: 536 you should take a Handicam with
you
T: 537 you should take a Handicam, yes
538 you can say you should take a
Handicam with you because there is
good beautiful sightseeing
539 err you should be able to record yes
S:
540 you must not take weapons with you
T:
541 you must not huh
SS:
542 huh huh
T:
543 you must not take weapons!
S:
544 Bazooka
T:
545 you must not have weapons with you
S:
546 bilingual dictionary
T:
547 you should have a bilingual dictionary with you yes
S:
548 some books with you
T:
549 sorry?
S:
550 you must not have some books like
T:
551 [you: can’t take illegal books here
S:
552 you don’t have to take the pet
T:
553 I don’t know about that
S:
554 pet
T:
555 I know I know
556 is it allowed?
S:
557 no
T:
558 what was your sentence?
S:
559 we don’t have to take
T:
560 [ha we don’t have to take our pets
S:
561 you can
S:
562 no we can’t but we don’t have to take it
T:
563 sometimes it is problematic
564 the actually isn’t there any limitations or restrictions to take animals here
S:
565 no you can’t take here cows
T:
566 elephants for example
SS:
567 huh huh huh
S:
568 zebra
T:
569 okay now listen
570 turn to page three
571 look at this table
572 you can see the different categories here A B and C
573 must have to have got to of course [+ + +]
574 err these show us?
575 obligation yes!
576 These two structures are used for obligation to express obligation
577 we call this strong obligation or a necessity
578 we have mild obligation or suggestion
S:
579 there is no difference between must and have to?
T:
580 yes there is
581 you know most of the grammarians believe they are the same
582 but some of them believe that when you are using must it is a kind of obligation which arises from inside
583 you you decide to do something
584 but have to has got some external causes you know?
585 And you can use must only for present
586 but you use have or have got to for other tenses as well
587 past future
588 for mild obligation what structure?
589/should/

T: 590 for prohibition?
S: 591 mustn’t
T: 592 you have these structures mustn’t
593 can we say don’t have to for this one?
S: 594 not
T: 595 no we can’t yes
596 the other one is for permission
S: 597 can
T: 598 what did you say?
S: 599 can
T: 600 permission no you can say can
601 you can for example [++]
602 and there is another one no obligation
S: 603 don’t have to
T: 604 don’t have to and?
605 needn’t this is absence of obligation
606 or no obligation
607 this is negative obligation or prohibition
608 and can is used for [++]
609 now let’s go to the next part
609 it is on the board
610 you can write it because we are short of time
611 let’s go to the next part
612 exercise one look back at the sentences you wrote in [++] of the opening task
613 if you use must have to should can’t mustn’t and don’t have to
614 if you did check to see that you used them correctly
615 actually we did this exercise
616 err now, let’s go to exercise
617 the next exercise
618 work with a partner and decide which of the following are necessary and obligatory to do if you want to get a drivers’ license in Iran
619 okay to get a drivers’ license in Iran err what do we have to do?
620 two by two
(pair work)
T: 621 okay let’s talk together about the first item
622 you please?
S: 623 first know how to drive
T: 624 um yes it is necessary yeah?
SS: 625/yes/
T: 626 okay what is your sentence?
S: 627 we must know how to drive
T: 628 um we have to know how to drive
629 you?
630 practice before the test?
S: 631 we must practice before the test
S: 632 you should
T: 633 for practice before the test
S: 634 [you should]
T: 635 this one actually is it necessary and obligatory?
SS: 636/yes/necessary/you should practice/
T: 637 practice before the test is advised yes!
S: 638 if we don’t practice we won’t accept
639 the examination is very difficult
T: 640 no the officer will ask you how you’ve done!
641 have you practised!
642 And if you say no you will fail
643 so it's better to say you should
644 practice before the test
645 take a test
646 next one please?
SS:
647 /yes/ you must/
T:
648 yes you have to! Take an eye test
649 take a written test
S:
650 you must take a written test
T:
651 yes you've got to take a written test
652 next one have a medical
653 examination?
S:
654 you must have: we have must a
655 medical examination
T:
656 which medical examination?
SS:
657 /yes/ yes/
T:
658 you've got to have a medical
659 examination?
S:
660 this is a law
T:
661 let's ask the judge
662 oh dear judge is there any medical
663 examination for getting a driving
664 license?
S:
665 yes
T:
666 medical examination!
667 eyes
S:
668 medical examination?
T:
669 not for eyes
670 so there is no that is the one [+ +
S:
671 /huh/
T:
672 you don't have to have a medical
673 examination
674 what about the next one?
675 You please?
676 Have a passport or birth certificate
677 as ID
S:
678 you have to have a passport or birth
679 certificate
T:
680 yes you've got to have a passport or
681 birth certificate as ID
682 okay err next one?
683 You please?
S:
684 we must a driving test
T:
685 yes you've got to pass a driving test
686 it is-
S:
687 [we must say you should
T:
688 for this one?
S:
689 yes, we don't if don't pass we fail
T:
690 no because he wants to get a drivers'
691 licence not
692 just waste his time
693 he wants to get A DRIVER'S
694 LICENSE
695 next one?
S:
696 have a high school diploma
697 you don't have
T:
698 you needn't have a high school
699 diploma
700 or you don't have to have a high
701 school diploma
702 own a car?
S:
703 no you don't have to have
T:
693 [you don't have to own a car]
694 you know that in Britain you can actually take the test in your car
695 you know that?

SS: 696 [++]

T: 697 because you are more familiar with your car

S: 698 with Paykan you cannot ride in Iran when you want to

T: 699 [what about the last one?]
700 You please?

S: 701 no you needn't have an international drivers' license

T: 702 err if you were a foreigner is it necessary or not?

SS: 703 /no/not necessary/

T: 704 okay, it is not necessary
705 so you don't have to have an international drivers' license
706 okay do you know about UK?
707 Have you got information on that?

SS: 708 /no/

T: 709 I would like you at least to guess in groups of three to add up, your information

S: 710 [++]

T: 711 about getting a drivers' license in the UK what do you think?
712 I will answer you later (pair work)

T: 713 okay listen
714 first of all when you want a provisional drivers' license in Britain

715 in UK provisional drivers' license is not is err a kind of driving license that is just for the period of time that you are learning
716 you must have it
717 and to: you must apply for it
718 then you will have eye sight check by a tester
719 and then you have to pay the charges for both exams
720 and then you must take the test
721 and while you're taking the test you can use your own car
722 and then you're allowed to and you're permitted to drive
723 to have your drivers' license provisional drivers' license means not for ever
724 just for present time okay
725 and if you want to say this you say
726 you! have to apply for a provisional drivers' license

SS: 727 [have to apply for a provisional drivers' license]

S: 728 you have to

T: 729 [you have to have]

S: 730 check you eye sight

T: 731 [your eye sight check by the tester then]

S: 732 you have to pay the fines

T: 733 [you have to pay]

S: 734 [the fines]

T: 735 the fixed charge for both tests
736 then you have to take the?

S: 737 [driving test]

T: 738 test and you can use your own car
what do you say?
you
SS: 741 [you should
T: 742 you can take the test in your own car
743 and then you get the drivers' license
744 so you can?
S: 745 drive
T: 746 drive and take lessons in driving
   using your provisional drivers' license
747 any questions? No?
S: 748 driving office?
749 in foreign countries
T: 750 [driving centre
751 okay thank you
752 let me have your papers back
T: 753 okay ah now we've got good news
   for you today
S: 754 good news
T: 755 yes you're going to have a quiz
S: 756 very good news
T7 (3rd Session)

T: 1. you please
   2. would you take the papers?
   (distribute papers)

T: 3. if you didn’t write this homework
   for the next class please, do it okay?
4. err close your books please okay?
5. take this
6. err there are two pieces of paper yes?
7. In front of you
8. at the beginning of this piece of paper you can see there is an opening
   task yes?
9. The beginning of the steps
10. look at step one and see what is going to happen
11. a friend of yours from the UK, is planning a short vacation in Iran
12. UK United?

SS: 13. /kingdom/

T: 14. kingdom
15. as he is a UK citizen he will have to deal with yes?
16. Manage immigration and customs
17. immigration?

SS: 18. [++++]

T: 19. coming from one country to the other
   country and live there forever
20. and customs?
21. an organisation to ask for taxes and money yes?
22. If you bring something into the country, when he enters Iran
23. so when he comes to Iran he has two problems
24. one problem is to go through the immigration office
25. and the other problem is to go through the?

SS: 26. /custom/

T: 27. And he doesn’t have much room
28. here room means space yes?
29. He doesn’t have much space to pack a lot of things okay?
30. he cannot carry with him a lot of things
31. because he is planning to travel with just a bag pack
32. what did what does he have to travel?
33. Just a?

SS: 34. /bag pack/

T: 35. bag pack
36. here are some of the things he’s thinking of taking with him
37. now these are possible things that he may carry to Iran yes?
38. Let’s see what they are
39. a passport, yes?
40. A surf board
41. who knows what a surf board is?

S: 42. go on with this on the sea

T: 43. hum on the!

S: 44. waves

T: 45. [waves okay?
46. so what is the verb?
47. The verb is surf okay?
48. to surf means to move on the water yes?
49. Usually wave yes?
50. Wave of the sea
51. now for example go wind surfing
52. the sport is wind surfing
53. now, what is surf board?
54. surf board is a (. )is something like a panel
55. a board for surfing
56. there’s something under the feet
57. yes under the feet of that person who is going to ride at the waves that is
called surf board
58. on television you can see yes?
59. Did you understand?

S: 60. like snow board

T: 61. [customs office yes?
62. And he doesn’t have much room
63. here room means space yes?
61 like?
S: snow board
T: yes okay fresh fruit you know
63 an international drivers’ license
64 books about Iran
65 a return airline ticket of course
66 a map of Iran
67 a laptop computer
68 laptop?
69 yes okay fresh fruit you know the boxes where you think they
70 belong
71 yes you can put them on your feet while you are in an aeroplane and
72 you can work with your computer
73 laptop small movable portable computer
74 a credit card or
75 a credit card in other countries you have a special card
76 when you go shopping or when you go to buy anything you don’t need to
77 pay money
78 show the credit card and your credit card will account for it yes?
79 a tourist visa
80 of course photographs of his hometown yes
81 tapes and CDs
82 an umbrella and hiking boots
83 boots for hiking, okay?
84 these are the possible things that the person may think necessary to bring
85 into another country
86 here it is Iran yes?
S: sorry can we use a credit card for UK in Iran?
T: aha I mean I mean these are the possible things
88 I just said possible yes? Okay?
89 now’ we want to see
90 look at step two we want to see which of them are necessary or not
91 use the boxes below to help him organise the things he wants to take
92 to Iran
93 look at example number 1 box 1
94 box 1 those things which are necessary and obligatory
95 what is obligatory?
S: forced
T: yes, you have to have them yes?
98 You are forced to have them
99 if not you will have problems
100 number 1 is the necessary items
101 you can’t enter Iran, without this
102 you must take this with you okay?
103 so number one is necessary items
104 number 2 it’s prohibited by law
105 what is prohibit?
S: forbidden
T: forbidden by law
107 against the law
109 it means law does not allow you, to bring them into your country
110 you must not take this into Iran
111 number three it’s a good idea to bring this okay?
112 so number 2 is you should take with this you should take this with you okay?
113 it means number 2 is a kind of suggestion yes?
114 A kind of ah suggestion for a person to bring something into the country
115 and number four it’s your [+] to bring this but it isn’t really necessary
116 you don’t have to take this, okay?
117 what is the difference between number three and number four?
118 in number three it’s a good idea to bring this
119 in number four you don’t need to bring this
120 you can bring or?
121 You cannot
you can stop bringing it, okay?
now you are students
two by two for example you and you, you and you
every two students will talk to themselves,
talk to each other about these four items
work with a partner and put them in the boxes where you think they belong
have a piece of paper yes?
And just ask your ques- ask your friend yes?
Ask your friend that if it is necessary to have a kind of ( ) this or not please, just talk to your friend and mention if it is necessary to have passport to have a surf board, and the other things or not
you talk to each other okay?
first talk
please listen, first talk to each other okay?
then I will ask you to write it down okay?
now first talk yes?
(pair work)

127 understand?
146 Start now ask your friend (pair work)

T:
148 yes listen please?
149 You asked these items yes?
150 you asked your friend if it is necessary to bring these items to your country or not
151 and you also added some other items to bring into Iran or not
152 now go to step four
153 with your partner write sentences about one or items in each box
154 explain why you think they belong there okay?
155 for example you write for example a passport you write it is necessary to bring the passport
156 why?
157 Because?
158 Yes?
159 Let's first have a summary over what you did, okay?
160 I mean what you did up to now okay
161 let's discuss a passport!
162 If it belongs to number one number three or number four which one?

SS:
163 /one/

T:
164 a passport is as necessary as everything ( .) which is vital yes?
165 you know?
166 Okay a surf board
167 which number?

SS:
168 /number 4/

T:
169 number four yes?
170 Okay what about fresh fruit?

SS:
171 /number 4/

T:
172 four yes
173 who said number two?

SS:
174 huh

T:
for example you bring for example a box of bananas

they just ask you not to bring it to the country?

S: because the other side [+]

T: okay wait

next one an international drivers’ license?

SS: /number three/

T: number three

it’s a [+]

yes how about books about Iran?

SS: /number three/

T: number three again

it’s a good idea

a return airline ticket?

SS: /one/ three/

T: maybe you say number one

maybe you say number three

I think number three because you can just in Iran buy a ticket to go back yes?

A map of Iran?

SS: number three

T: again number three

a laptop computer?

SS: /one/ three/

T: number three or you may say number four okay?

how about a credit card?

SS: /number four/

T: it is exactly number?

SS: four

T: four yes number four

because number three there is no use of credit cards yes?

To bring to- err of course maybe you can use them in some special places and you have international transfer to other countries yes?

You can say number three too

also number four yes?

S: excuse me instead of money that’s necessary

T: I know I know but in Iran the usage is low yes?

I said it is good but not so much used in Iran yes?

How about a tourist visa?

SS: number one

T: yes and a photograph of his hometown?

SS: number four

T: how about tapes and CDs?

SS: /four/ two/

T: number?

S: two

T: tapes and CDs against the law um some of them yes number two

but some of them is it number one?

SS: huh huh huh

T: umbrella?

SS: /three/

T: because Iran is not so much rainy

you can say number?

SS: /four/

T: or maybe number four yes?

How about hiking boots?
229 number four

230 okay?
231 so you categorise them into these steps
232 how about other things you mentioned they are necessary
233 what other things are in number one?
234 In number one category what other things you think they are necessary?

SS:
235 /scarf//money/

T:
236 he says scarf for women
237 yes or no?

SS:
238 yes

T:
239 for example when a woman comes to Iran at the air port they stop her
240 and she should just call somebody to bring a special clothes for Iranians yes?
241 So special clothes for Iranians

SS:
242 money

T:
243 money yes of course money
244 what about-

S:
245 airline ticket

T:
246 he says he has in the bag

S:
247 for his going

T:
248 returning?

S:
249 no for going to Iran cities

T:
250 of course yes
251 what else?

S:
252 water

T:
253 water!

SS:
254 huh

T:
255 we can’t find water in this country?
256 How about number two?
257 Part number two?
258 Prohibited by law

SS:
259 alcohol

T:
260 alcohol drinks and

S:
261 [opium
S:
262 bomb

T:
263 and special- bomb yes

S:
264 arms

T:
265 arms yes
266 missiles okay
267 number three it’s a good idea to bring this
268 you should take this with you
269 which things?

SS:
270 /warm clothes/

T:
271 warm clothes

S:
272 glasses

T:
273 glasses
274 also?

S:
275 camera

T:
276 camera okay?

S:
277 [+++]

T:
278 and the others
279 and number four it’s okay to bring this but it isn’t really necessary
280 you don’t have to take this with you

S:
281 /water//TV//car/

T:
282 you could say a lot of things
283 no no you can say lot of things but say those things which are appropriate for this sentence
you don’t need to bring a for example credit card was good in this list
how about other things?
S:
calculator
T:
maybe calculator
you don’t need to bring your?
S:
otebook
T:
okay notebook and other things okay?
now part four write sorry with your partner
write sentences about one or two items in this box explaining what you think they belong there okay?
you ask your partner and your partner write the things they think they belong yes?
With your partner write sentences about one or two items
sentences about one or two items in these boxes
why do you think they belong there
just one or two
for example you just use four example say passport
it is necessary to have a passport because at the airport they stop you if you don’t have a passport okay
just write two sentences, okay?
just two items
understand?
S:
two items of err
T:
[of these parts yes?
These parts
why it is necessary or it is not necessary to bring the?
SS:
[+++]
T:
list
S:

SS:

T:

S:

T:

S:

T:

T:
a tourist visa for?
S: for make a journey in Iran
T: to make a journey!
S: in Iran
T: yes to take a trip to Iran you need a visiting card for visiting which places?
S: for example Isfahan or err
T: okay the other cities yes?
S: now you [++] sentences you wrote?
T: you must have a passport because you must go from the airline
S: you must go to the airline
T: you must have a passport it is necessary to have a passport you read one of your sentences?
S: you don’t have to take a credit card to Iran because it’s not useful in Iran
T: yes it’s not used so much in Iran yes? You?
S: you don’t have to bring a laptop computer because we have many computers in Iran
T: okay, it doesn’t mean laptop computers are unnecessary because this is takes because it takes and also you?
S: tapes and CDs they are forbidden in Iran’s [++]
T: ha?
S: yes it is not necessary and it is prohibited yes? to bring CDs and tapes any CDs and tapes to Iran yes
prohibited and absolutely not permitted often by law

383 so for the second box we use these words mustn’t and can’t
384 you mustn’t bring CDs or you must can’t bring CDs
385 part three you can bring a surf board
386 use can’t to show that something is permitted
387 so can is used for permission yes?
388 And you should bring a credit card
389 use should to show something is a good idea yes?
390 So should is the next category
391 you don’t have to bring the surf sports surf board
392 use do not or don’t have to to show something is permitted but not necessary
393 you can do it if you want to but you are not required to do it yes?
394 So we have some categories yes?
395 The first one necessary have to have got to and must
396 number two prohibition or prohibited mustn’t and can’t
397 number three permission can
398 number four?
399 Number four?

SS:
400 /good idea/

T:
401 yes good idea should
402 and number five don’t have to
403 permitted but not necessary okay? yes?
404 Now go to exercise one
405 look back at the sentences you write in step four of the opening task
406 do you remember?
407 you wrote some sentences yes?
408 go and refer them refer to them
409 did you use must have to have got to should can can’t mustn’t and don’t have to in your sentences?

SS:
410 /yes/

T:
411 yes if you did check to see that you used them correctly okay?

412 for example again look at them to see if you wrote I have to do that or I must do that
413 if you didn’t use them rewrite the sentences okay?
414 if you didn’t use these words write the sentences again
415 look at the examples
416 he must have a valid passport
417 it is required by law okay?
418 so you should write he must have a valid passport or he has to have a valid passport
419 understand?
420 go back to your sentences and rewrite your sentences in the form of must have to and other words
421 start and check your sentences (pair work)

T:
422 you have to have passport to enter to Iran you please?

S:
423 you cannot bring the tape and CDs because [+++]

T:
424 they are not allowed
425 you please?

S:
426 you can have a passport to enter in Iran

T:
427 yes you please?
428 why did you say can?
429 you must have a passport yes?
430 You?

S:
431 you should bring a map of Iran

T:
432 yes should
433 you please?

S:
434 you can you can take a map of Iran because you can know about geography err

T:
435 [because it is better to know about the geography of Iran
436 you?
S: 437 err you mustn't have CDs or tapes because some music in Iran is not allowed
T: 438 very good yes you mustn't have CDs or tapes because some kinds of music are not allowed yes? Okay?
S: 440 you should you should carry a book about Iran
T: 441 yes you?
S: 442 you don't have to bring a surf board in Iran
T: 443 ha he doesn't have to he doesn't have to bring a surf board to Iran you please?
S: 445 you don't have to bring an umbrella because Iran is not rainy
T: 446 Iran is not a rainy country yes you please?
S: 448 you must not bring fresh fruit into Iran because we have enough fruit in Iran
T: 449 no okay you don't say mustn't you don't have to you don't have to bring fresh fruit because there are so many so mush fresh fruit in Iran good
go to exercise two this is exercise two
SS: 453 /three/
T: 454 two I mean not three exercise three mistaken yes?
455 Work with a partner decide which the following are necessary and obligatory to do if you want to get a drivers' license in Iran
456 look at black board
457 look at black board
458 the topic changed
459 not going to the airport and not going to another country but looking for a drivers' license or apply for a drivers' license
460 if you want to get drivers' license which of them are necessary
461 look at them
462 know how to drive
SS: 463 /yes/
T: 464 practice listen practice before a test
465 take an eye test
466 take a written test
467 have a medical exam
468 have a passport or birth certificate as ID
469 pass a driving test
470 have a high school diploma
471 own a car have
472 an international drivers' license
473 you ask friend which of them are necessary to have when you are going to have a test on drivers' license
S: 474 ask?
T: 475 no just ask don't write (pair work)
T: 476 okay, okay, listen please now say you say for example know how to drive say with must or can or the other words you?
S: 478 yes we must know how to drive
T: 479 yes we must know how to drive
480 correct yes?
481 Number two you?
S: 482 we must practice before the test
T: 483 we must practice before the test
SS: 484 /can//should/
T: 485 we should practice before the test 486 sometimes you are a driver you don’t need 487 it is not necessary 488 you have been driving maybe two years yes? 489 Before you get your drivers’ license yes 490 should means is better 491 you may say must okay? 492 so I should practice before the test 493 you?
S: 494 I have to take an eye test
T: 495 yes I have to take an eye test yes? 496 If not the police does not let me do it, yes?
S: 498 [+++]
T: 499 take a written test
S: 500 I can’t take a written test
SS: 501 /must/
T: 502 I must take a written test or I have to yes 503 I have to take a written test 504 you please M?
S: 505 I have to a medical examination
T: 506 I have to have a medical examination
SS: 507 /no/
T: 508 in Iran no medical examination 509 just eye exam yes? 510 So I should yes? 511 Or I don’t have to yes? 512 I don’t have to have a medical examination 513 just eye exam 514 you?
S: 515 I have to have a passport or birth certificate
T: 516 yes I have to have or I must have a passport 517 you please?
S: 518 I must pass a driving test
T: 519 I must pass a driving test or I have to pass a driving test 520 you?
S: 521 I don’t have to [+++]
T: 522 I don’t- high school diploma 523 I don’t have to have a high school diploma
S: 524 [High school diploma
T: 525 yes you please?
S: 526 you don’t have err own car
T: 527 I don’t have to have [+++]
S: 529 I don’t have to have a international drivers’ license
T: 530 yes I don’t have to have an international drivers’ license 531 task on page four 532 there is another task speaking 533 do you know how to get drivers’ license in the UK 534 forget about Iran 535 you know just take the drivers’ license in this way in Iran 536 now we go to UK and you want to get a drivers’ license 537 what do you have to do to get the drivers’ license 538 the license there in what ways it it different here 539 talk to your partner 540 find out what he knows 541 be ready to report on your findings
now you talk to your friend and you ask him his ideas about err if in the UK they are the same as Iran and there are the same steps or different steps how do you get a license in the UK okay if he has information you will answer if not you ask him how say any kind of information that you have yes?

(pair work)

T: look at the black board enough enough so in which phase are [+++] from Iran do you think the test will be a more difficult?

SS: /no//more difficult/

T: exactly more difficult and may be it is a technical test yes?

SS: [+++]

T: no no I have heard I have just heard about UK and the special and technical test that drivers' license in the UK yes?

S: yes

T: okay you can say is more difficult and you should be more prepared you must just do a lot of [+++]

S: 1 found that they don't use own car

T: you don't use your own car in Iran it is the same I mean you don't use your own car I think I think there they use their car you can use your own car yes

S: err they must have a medical examination

T: aha what other things this is there you know forget this yes?

S: addiction of alcohol

T: an addiction addicted to alcohol and some other some mater-

S: so you can't have a drivers' license if you are addicted what else?

S: I think the was a medical err medical examination and more [+++] than Iran

T: yes okay?

S: what else did you find?

S: [+++] exam is different

T: so you must be more prepared and you must be err what? You must be ready to have a difficult exam how about you anything new?

S: I think I have very hard test for example

T: um do you have a hard test written test?

S: some of the law in UK is different from Iran

T: aha the law is different yes okay the law of the traffic rules yes the rules of traffic [+++]

S: I think they must have a high school diploma

T: yes maybe they must have high school diploma

S: I think have an international drivers' license for foreigners
T: 589 aha it is necessary
S: 590 they use general vehicles
T: 591 yes okay?
592 any ideas at the end
593 it is written you have to be ready to
give a report on your findings
594 please if you find anything then you
can come to the board and say
595 I’ve found out that it is necessary to
have a for example diploma
596 you must have a diploma and you
must have a lot of other things okay?
T8 (3rd Session)

T: 1 what do you guys do?
   2 What’s going on?
   3 What to since last Monday?
S: 4 [++ +]
T: 5 ha?
S: 6 [++ +]
T: 7 what did you do these last few days?
   8 anything special?
   9 ha?
SS: (no answer)
T: 10 ha?
S: 11 we prepare the reading for homework
T: 12 only prepared for the readings
   13 three days!
   14 we’re gonna see in a minute
   15 where were you Ahmad?
S: 16 I went to Mashad
T: 17 go to Mashad?
S: 18 yes
T: 19 Alohom sale ala (Peace be upon him)
SS: 20 huh
T: 21 anyway what else?
   22 how was it?
   23 who did you go with?
S: 24 I went there by my family
T: 25 with your family?
S: 26 yes
T: 27 ok!
S: 28 by the train
T: 29 by the train ha?

30 did you have fun?
S: 31 yes very much
T: 32 how many days were you there?
S: 33 for four days
T: 34 four days! very nice very nice
   35 and you prayed for us?
S: 36 err green trains was a new train that
   37 was very! very modern
T: 38 new train?
S: 39 yes
T: 40 really?
S: 41 yes
T: 42 people gonna tear it and huh very
   43 soon
S: 44 no of course
SS: 45 huh
T: 46 [++ +]
T: 47 no no I said you should have prayed
   48 for us
S: 49 pray pray yes
T: 50 tell the truth
SS: 51 huh
T: 52 ok he forgot us
   53 it’s ok
   54 nobody is perfect
S: 55 we prayed to pass this time
T: 56 you prayed to be passed this time
   57 ha?
   58 be sure we pray for you
SS: 59
58 huh huh huh

T: 
59 anyway what did you do this morning?

S: 
60 this morning I woke up early 5:30 am and said my prayers and [+ ++] and then I come to class and after the class I want to go to the Elmoh Sanat university for sport centre

T: 
63 for what sport?
64 wrestling?

S: 
65 for a match yeah

T: 
66 you have a wrestling match?

S: 
67 yeah

T: 
68 you should have told us
69 we would come and watch

S: 
70 [+ ++] 

T: 
71 ha? If you had told us you have a match we would have come there shouting (shouting the student's name while clapping hands)

S: 
72 thank you very much

T: 
73 no! you should have told us
74 it would be fun if I was there to see how you look in your singlet
75 now they call it- what?
76 singlet

S: 
77 yeah I know

T: 
78 [+ ++] yes or no?

S: 
79 have single

T: 
80 [no no no a singlet is that uniform that the wrestlers wear 

S: 
81 I can show it to you

T: 
82 [yeah please don’t take it out

SS: 
83 huh

T: 
84 that’s good
85 I wish you luck
86 I hope you win it
87 anyway how about you?
88 what happened to your machine?
89 huh your machine causes us sickness whenever you get into to come to class and

S: 
90 [my machine had- and can be 

T: 
92 why?
93 everyday lay 15 minutes late

S: 
94 I am sorry [+ + +]

T: 
95 he speaks in sign language

SS: 
96 huh

T: 
97 no why are you late ever yday?

S: 
98 I think that err

T: 
99 [six versions
100 traffic is every day morning every day morning there is more traffic

S: 
101 [Vally Asre traffic is very err heavy

T: 
102 heavy ha! Yeah!

SS: 
103 huh

T: 
104 traffic!
105 anyway how about you Mr S?

S: 
106 nothing

T: 
107 nothing about computers?
108 no news about technology?
109 nothing?

S: 
110 nothing

T: 
111 it’s very boring ha?
112 M! did you miss your friend?
113 did you miss your friend?
S: 114 no
T: 115 no! you didn’t miss your friend! no!
S: 116 he is my best friend err
T: 117 [did you miss him?
S: 118 yes
T: 119 or you said no!
SS: 120 huh
T: 121 I was shocked
122 ok today we have a change err for the first hour or so
123 we gonna do something on the side of the book
124 we gonna talk about a new
125 I don’t know we’re gonna have a new idea
126 we’re gonna do something different
127 we’re gonna do a different task ok!
128 I gonna hand out this papers
129 do not write on them
130 if you write on them you gonna get a zero
131 you gonna fail the class
132 do you understand?
133 If one person writes on this everybody gets zero ok!
134 please! serious
135 do not write on these papers
136 close your books
137 put everything in your desk ok!
138 you don’t need to have a lot of different thing on it ok!
139 of course you can open your notebooks because you gonna have to write on a separate piece of paper ok!
140 don’t chew the papers! OK! in case you’re hungry huh
141 ok basically we gonna have a discussion about this ok!
142 we gonna start a [+ + +]
143 ok step one
144 everybody go to the first page at the top
145 M start reading
146 read loud ok!
S: (reads out)
T: 147 ok everybody look at me
148 how many of you have gone on a trip! or let’s say a journey to some place far away?
149 not to Mashad or to Ghazvin
150 some place far away
151 where did you go S?
S: 152 India
T: 153 you went to India?
S: 154 yes
T: 155 good how was it?
156 did you like it?
S: 157 yes I was born in India and err
T: 158 [but you are Iranian?
S: 159 yes huh
T: 160 ok
S: 161 and for seven years I had been in India
T: 162 so you were there until you are seven years old!
S: 163 yes
T: 164 interesting
165 who else?
166 Where?
S: 167 I went to Mecca
T: 168 you went to Mecca?
S: 169 yes
T: 170 ok
S: 171 three years ago
T: 172 so we have a Haji in our class
SS: 173 huh
T: 174 who else?
S: 175 I went to Europe
T: 176 you went to Europe?
S: 177 yes
T: 178 what part?
S: 179 err France and Italy
T: 180 ok what did you- I have a question
181 what did you take with you?
182 Did you take your refrigerator? Ha?
183 Your washing machine?
184 Yes or no?
SS: 185 no
T: 186 why not?
S: 187 because [+-+]
T: 188 what?
S: 189 because it isn’t essential
T: 190 aha it’s not essential
191 so it’s too big ha?
192 So what sort of things should you take with you on a trip?
193 If I wanna go to let say to Pakistan ok! what should I take with me?
194 Or if I wanna go to Thailand what should I take with me?
S: 195 clothes
T: 196 clothes?
S: 197 your passport
T: 198 ok clothes!
199 How much clothes?
200 a lot of clothes?
SS: 201 no
T: 202 no why not?
S: 203 it depends on how many days you want to-
T: 204 [I wanna travel light
205 I don’t wanna take too much I don’t know too many things with me
206 ok so I should take some clothes
207 ok what else?
S: 208 money
T: 209 money?
S: 210 yes money
T: 211 huh so money huh
212 that’s true
213 the most important thing is money
214 what else after money?
S: 215 equipments
T: 216 personal equipment
217 like what?
SS: 218 toothbrush
T: 219 toothbrush!
S: 220 comb
T: 221 comb!
S: 222 credit card
T: 223 credit card ha? Huh
224 ok interesting let’s go back to the handout ok!
225 So we have somebody
226 he is an Englishman
227 he is British
228 he is from the UK
229 what does UK stand for?
S: 230 United
T: 231 [UK!
SS: 232 United Kingdom
T: 233 United Kingdom
234 good United kingdom
235 ok he wants to come to Iran
236 why!
237 I don’t know huh
238 but he’s coming here
239 I think one of these people that come and walk in the streets
240 have you ever seen them?
241 they wear these shorts and wear long beards
242 like this very long
243 and blond hair with the backpack
244 and they’re just walking
245 I see them a lot of them [+ +] ha?
SS: 246 huh
T: 247 anyway I think he is one of those guys
248 because they are the only ones to take a backpack with them
249 you know what a backpack is?
S: 250 yeah
T: 251 what is a backpack M?
S: 252 a bag like err
T: 253 [and you carry it on your back ha?
254 It’s a backpack
255 you learned it at level two
256 remember?
SS: 257 yeah
T: 258 yeah! That’s why you don’t know it
SS: 259 huh
T: 260 anyway what?
S: 261 much room [+ +] possible much
T: 262 no no it says he doesn’t have much room ok!
263 he doesn’t have that much room to carry his things
264 ok he has a small area
265 only a backpack ok!
266 now we gonna start by saying
267 let’s start a passport
268 who has a passport here?
269 who has a passport?
S: 270 not here
T: 271 not now in the class
272 but talking at present who has a passport
273 maybe it’s at home
274 maybe it’s in your back pocket I don’t know
275 who has a passport?
276 only two people?
277 nobody else has a passport?
SS: 278 huh
T: 279 that’s interesting ok!
280 Have you ever seen a passport M?
SS: 281 huh huh
T: 282 yes or no?
283 it’s small yeah
284 it’s small and it has your picture in it
SS: 285 huh
T: 286 and whenever you wanna go they stamp your passport ok!
S: 287 I make it
T: 288 you make it ha! Huh
SS: 289 huh
T: 290 that’s why we came here
291 we brought the camera to catch you ok!
292 next a surf board!
293 who has gone surfing?
294 Have you ever seen the people at this- at the sea?
295 the wave is crushing
296 so there is a very long thing called a surf board
297 and they take it in the middle of the water and then they jump on it
298 and oorr oorr and the wave [+ +]
299 ok that’s the surf board
300 we really need it in Iran
301 next?
S: 302 fresh fruit
T: 303 fresh fruit of course
304 oh I: ha- err of course I know some people
305 they were immigrating to Canada
306 they were leaving
307 both families were leaving Iran
308 and they took cucumber with them
309 and oranges and huh [+ +]
international drivers’ license
what do you think?
who has a driver license here?
one two three four people five people
don’t lie

S:
315 huh
T:
316 anyway now you can take your drivers’ license to the I don’t know some of one of these bureaux
317 and what they do is they err make it international
318 transfer it to the international drivers’ license in 24 hours for ten thousand tomans
319 next books about Iran
320 that’s easy
321 a return airline ticket
322 travelling return ticket
323 a map of Iran
324 that’s easy
325 a laptop computer
3261 [+ + +] really necessary
327 a credit card ok!
328 tourist visa photographs of his hometown tapes and CDs an umbrella hiking boots
329 everybody! what is hiking?
330 who likes to go hiking?
S:
331 [+ + +]
T:
332 ha?
S:
333 hiking?
T:
334 [+ + +]
S:
335 no walking hiking
T:
336 [mountains!
337 hiking!
SS:
338 walking
T:
339 what?
S:
340 common sporting
T:
341 common sporting?
S:
342 yes
T:
343 ok what else?
344 what’s the different guess?
345 what is hiking?
S:
346 on the ice
S:
347 walking
T:
348 on ice!
349 What about ice skates?
350 no that’s ice skates
S:
351 walking
352 normal walking
T:
353 ok listen
354 when you hike you go to the mountains
355 that’s mountain climbing
356 of course these are real mountains
357 but hiking is you go to let’s say I don’t know out of the city into the country
358 and you walk all- just walk through the hills
359 through the trees I don’t know the wood the forests
360 just walking and enjoying the scenery
361 that’s hiking
362 but you walk in the city that’s not hiking
363 you need to be out of the city ok
364 now so everybody knows what those are!
365 except M who didn’t know what a passport is!
366 and [+ + +] next go to step 2
367 step 2 use the boxes below to help him organise the things he wants to take to Iran
368 put a mark there and put them in the boxes where you think they belong
369 ok now what is it?
370 talking about it say use the boxes below to help him
371 who is him?
372 who is he talking about?
S:
373 the person who wants
T:
374 yeah the person who wants to come to Iran
375 first it is necessary and err
376 ok you can’t enter Iran without this
377 you must take this with you
378 something that is very important
379 now open- get a piece of paper on your desk, Ok!
380 In a piece of paper on your desk
381 let the paper [+++] order the category
382 first things that are very necessary
383 the things that are against the law
384 you can’t bring them to Iran
385 three it’s a good idea to bring them
386 should bring them
387 they won’t hurt
388 and number 4 it’s ok to bring this but it’s not necessary
389 you can bring it but you don’t need it ok!
390 number one
391 what do you guys think?
392 Necessary and it’s a: something that you need to bring
393 I wanna give you a couple of minutes
394 two three minutes
395 make a list on your own ok! (individual work)

T:
396 ok good let’s see what do you guys think
397 it is absolutely necessary to bring it to Iran ha!
398 number one!

SS:
399 passport

T:
400 passport ok!
401 why do you think a passport is absolutely necessary? Ha?

S:
402 we cannot come to Iran without
T:
403 we can’t?

S:
404 [++]

T:
405 we can’t?

S:
406 come to Iran without a passport
T:
407 we can’t enter the country
408 he could come, but they won’t let him in ok!

S:
409 yes

T:
410 ok! Number two
411 what do you think about the surfboard?
412 Is a surfboard absolutely necessary?

S:
413 no

T:
414 It is against the law?

SS:
415 no

T:
416 Is it err a good idea to bring it?

SS:
417 no

T:
418 Ha?

S:
419 no

T:
420 ok it’s ok to bring it but it is not really necessary ha?
421 which one do you think it is?

SS:
422/2/4/

T:
423 two!

S:
424 number 4

T:
425 number 4 is- I think is better
426 but why do you think that the surfboard is against the law?
427 you could bring it and put it in your house decoration ok!
428 So how about fresh fruit?
429 Fresh fruit
430 what do you think?
431 one two three or four?

SS:
432/3/4/

T:
433 three!

SS:
434 four

T:
435 four it’s ok to bring but it is not really necessary right!
436 Iran has very good fruit
437 next! An international drivers’ license

S:
438 [++]

T:
439 ha?
S: 440 three
T: 441 three!
442 why?
443 tell me why?
444 why do you think it’s three?
445 because?
S: 446 that man doesn’t have
T: 447 [he doesn’t have?
S: 448 hasn’t a car
T: 449 he doesn’t have a car
S: 450 [doesn’t have a car and err
S: 451 he might want to rent a car
T: 452 maybe yeah maybe he wants to rent a car
S: 453 he can hire a car from a car agency
T: 454 he can rent a car from us huh
SS: 455 huh
T: 456 I think something else you know!
457 I think it’s a good 458 it’s a form of identification ha!
459 one he can identify himself with the ca- with the: international drivers’ license
460 but will he be able to drive in Iran?
461 maybe he could drive in England but how about Tehran?
462 so which one is it?
463 one two three or four?
464 what do you guy say?
S: 465 five
T: 466 five!
467 no what do you think?
SS: 468 /3//4/
S: 469 in England the err
T: 470 [driving!
S: 471 [+ + +]
T: 472 is on the other side of the street ok!
473 what do you think about that?
SS: 474 huh
T: 475 that’s doesn’t matter in Tehran
476 it’s actually ignorable huh
SS: 477 huh
T: 478 anyway one two three or four?
SS: 479 /2/3/4/
T: 480 I think three
481 it’s a good idea to bring this ok!
482 It doesn’t hurt
483 next! books about Iran?
SS: 4843
T: 485 it’s a good idea to bring it! Yeah!
SS: 486 yes
T: 487 he has one backpack ok!
488 next! a return airline ticket!
SS: 4891
S: 490 books about Iran?
T: 491 books about Iran!
492 I don’t think it’s-
493 I think you could come here and buy it but [+ + +]
494 so it’s up to you
S: 4954
T: 496 four! A return airline ticket
SS: 497 one
T: 498 one it’s huh absolutely necessary
SS: 499 huh
T: 500 he might come here and I don’t know [+ + +]
501 ok next?
502 a map of Iran!
SS:
T: five!
SS: six!
T: I could say four.
I don't know it depends.
S: a map of Iran for what?
for the cities for example.
or the map of mountains of Iran.
the map of the err.
S: [what map?]
T: he want a map to see where Tehran
is where Shiraz is where Mashad is
where Ghazvin is!
he might wanna go to these cities.
S: the people of the err the location
of the err.
T: [countries he wants us- the city sorry
he wants to see.
Tehran he wants to see.
I don't know how to get from
Ferdowsi square to Darband.
S: he should buy in Tehran.
T: yeah I think he should buy it here.
he could buy it here very cheap ok!
And err I don't think he could find
maps on Iran over there.
maybe he could find an Atlas but he
should buy.
S: [the tour guys say to tourists]
T: yeah but he is not a-
maybe I don't know he is not going
to take a tour.
S: the map of the location of the
cities of Iran is not useful.
because where is the Shiraz where is
the Mashad it is not good for him.
S: and one of his friends is in Iran.
T: all of his friends are here?
S: one of his friends.
T: yeah he has a friend here.
yeah it is true his friend is here.
so I don't know.
what do you think?
S: forty.
T: four!
S: fifty fifty.
T: fifty fifty huh.
S: [+ + +]
T: so which one is fifty fifty?
which one of these?
S: no about the having a friend fifty
fifty.
T: but no! hundred percent a friend of
yours.
you’re his friend.
your friend is coming!
S: understand that.
T: ok.
S: hundred percent.
T: hundred percent huh ok.
now so does he need a map yes or
no?
S: no.
T: next!
S: a laptop computer! Huh.
T: Mr S laptop computer?
S: five.
T: five!
n laptop yeah.
S:
two
T: 
two!
564 it’s not your personal product
565 your personal computer is yours
566 you can bring it
next!
S: 
568 [++]
T: 
569 no why did you say that?
S: 
gomrok? (customs)
T: 
571 oh you haven’t studied yet ok!
572 You won’t pay duty
573 duty is the tax when you’re going to the customs ok!
574 it’s your own personal belonging next!
575 so a laptop computer throw it out
577 he only has one backpack
578 next!
579 a credit card!
SS: 
580 one
T: 
581 one absolutely
582 but , ok , [++] your dad has a I don’t know a grocery
583 a small a very small grocery
584 does your dad take credit cards?
SS: 
585 no
T: 
586 who takes credit cards in Iran?
S: 
587 nobody has international credit card
T: 
588 huh
S: 
589 [++]
T: 
590 it’s rubbish huh
SS: 
591 huh
T: 
592 who takes credit cards in Iran?
593 if I was him I would bring it
594 hotels, travel agencies take credit cards
595 I don’t know different places tourist agencies take credits cards
596 there are places that take credit cards in iran ok!
597 so I would bring it
598 you guys don’t want it
next a tourist visa?
SS: 
600 one
T: 
601 a tourist visa is like the passport anyway right?
S: 
602 yes sure
T: 
603 next! photographs of his hometown?
SS: 
604 huh
T: 
605 ok
S: 
606 [++]
T: 
607 what’s wrong with [++]? Ha?
608 or did you listen to some different types of roozah (religious sermons) or I don’t know
SS: 
609 [++]
T: 
610 ha?
SS: 
611 [++]
T: 
612 exactly because they like to see what was the:
613 I don’t know tourists are weird huh people
614 they come to visit
615 are a little bit weird
616 they like to see the crazy things ok!
617 I think it’s correct because all cities in the world are all the same
618 you need to go into the country and see-
S: 
619 the culture
T: 
620 yeah the cultures
621 different types of things
622 next!
623 an umbrella!
624 what do you think?
SS: 
625 four
S: 
626 he can buy it in Iran
T: 627 he can buy it in Iran!
S: 628 it doesn’t rain
T: 629 it doesn’t rain in England!
630 it rains every day
631 but in Tehran!
S: 632 every year
T: 633 no! thank God it has been raining a
good [+ + +]
634 thank God
635 ok next!
636 hiking boots!
S: 637 it’s not necessary
SS: 638
T: 639 um well he has a friend
640 but in Iran we walk a lot in the
streets
S: 641 he can buy in Iran
T: 642 it’s cheaper too! Ha!
S: 643 dollar in Tehran
T: 644 he pays dollars?
S: 645 yes
T: 646 he brings the pound maybe
647 he [+ + +] dollars who knows but the
pound is much more powerful than
the dollar ha? Ok!
648 now! I want you to get in groups
649 listen two by two ok!
650 now I want you to add
651 no we’ll do it together
652 it’s ok
653 what do you guys think?
654 let’s add three or four things to the
group of words we have that are
absolutely necessary
655 what necessary thing that is not
written in the page itself!
656 of course we said the first and the
most important thing money
657 money is one
658 what else?
S: 659 [+ + +]
T: 660 huh you’re talking about a [+ + +]
ha?
661 He the what?
662 I don’t know
663 does he- you said absolutely
necessary?
S: 664 it depends on the person
T: 665 he can buy it here
666 he can share
S: 667 emergency
T: 668 emergency no
S: 669 [+ + +]
T: 670 clothes?
S: 671 yes
T: 672 ok I don’t get sick
673 I have a friend and I don’t get sick
674 money
675 what else?
676 can you bring your girl friend?
SS: 677 huh
T: 678 yes or no?
SS: 679 yes
T: 680 absolutely not
681 he should travel single
682 ok next?
S: 683 insurance
T: 684 insurance! well
S: 685 clothes
T: 686 what?
S: 687 clothes
T: 688 blouse?
S: 689 no clothes
T: 690 clothes! ok
SS: 691 huh
T: 692 clothes are important
S: 693 [+ + +]
T: 694 gun! Huh
SS: 695 huh huh
T: 696 what else?
S: 697 one more
698 come on?
S: 699 if one thing is necessary
700 it’s necessary to bring with himself his tablets and err
T: 701 he is not sick
702 he is very healthy
S: 703 if he has a special fever
T: 704 a what?
S: 705 special fever
T: 706 desert?
S: 707 fever
S: 708 a disease
T: 709 aha!
SS: 710 huh
T: 711 ok disease huh
712 a disease good
713 good job
714 if he has a certain disease right!
S: 715 cancer pneumonia
T: 716 pneumonia
717 pneumonia is not a cancer
718 but ok diabetes
719 ok he should bring his medicine
S: 720 if he is governmental person he should bring the bodyguards
T: 721 bring bodyguards huh
SS: 722 huh
T: 723 of course he is your friend
724 I don’t know but my friends [+ + +]
725 yeah yeah next!
726 how about things that are against the law?
S: 727 drugs
T: 728 drugs!
729 ok he shouldn’t bring drugs
S: 730 number two
T: 731 what?
S: 732 number two
T: 733 number two
734 then what else?
S: 735 magazine
T: 736 magazines!
737 ok he shouldn’t bring bad magazines or books
SS: 738 huh huh huh
T: 739 it’s true
740 it’s very bad
741 what else?
S: 742 wine champagne
T: 743 guns! Good
S: 744 wine
T: 745 what?
S: 746 wine champagne
T: 747 alcohol!!
748 he shouldn’t bring?
S: 749 over 18
S: 750 [+ + +] credit card and we travel to another country
751 we take money for buy err credit card or no by
T: 752 you don’t pay the money
you don't pay for a credit card
you have credit in the bank
it will issue a credit card if you have a good credit
and then you can use the credit card instead of money
in Iran we need a credit card and money
he doesn't really need it but if he brings it it doesn't hurt ok!
S: the credit card for him err have a lot of pound or dollar when he go in Iran?
T: that's what he says
he needs the money ok!
Money is more important than credit card ok!
let's to [+] enough ok!
how about this group
what did you come up with?
read one of your sentences!
be quiet listen!
S: it's a good idea to bring a map of Iran
because I want to know where I and help him to go every place
T: it's a good idea to?
S: bring a map
T: [bring a map of Iran ok!
does he have to bring a map of Iran or not?
S: no I haven’t
T: tell me
you didn’t say it it’s a good idea
what does it mean they have to bring?
he does not have to bring
should bring
shouldn’t bring!
S: it should he should bring it
T: he should bring it?
S: yes he should bring it but it is not necessary
T: ok how about you?
S: about the return airline ticket
it is necessary and he must bring it because he wants to back his country
T: so he must bring it good
why?
Because he wants to go back to his country
ok Mohammad!
S: it is necessary to check a return airline ticket go from Iran
and I think it is better that he have a he has open ticket
T: huh why?
how long?
What about you?
S: passport is necessary because he can’t enter
T: [ok good he must bring a passport
why?
S: he can’t enter to Iran without it
T: he can’t enter the country
God bliss your teacher
he can’t enter the?
S: to Iran without a passport
T: good what about you?
S: he must not bring a surf board because it’s so big and takes much room
T: it takes much room
too much room good
how about you?
S: he needs a return airline ticket because he can’t come back to his country on time and then he must pay a lot of money for another ticket
T: good three four people talk about return airline ticket huh
SS: huh
T: 812 don’t worry about it too much  
813 it’s ganna be ok  
814 how about you?

S: 815 it is not necessary to bring fresh fruit  
because there is fresh fruit in Iran  
T: 816 good  
S: 817 but not the best fruit in Iran they go  
out Iran  
T: 818 best fruit leave the country no  
819 if you have money you can buy good  
fruit  
820 believe me  
821 you?

S: 822 he doesn’t have to take international  
driver’s license because driving in  
Iran hasn’t law  
823 and it is very difficult for him to  
drive in Iran  
T: 824 doesn’t have law!  
825 are you serious?

S: 826[+ + +]  
T: 827 what?

S: 828 we don’t respect it  
T: 829 yeah good good job  
830 let’s read this read loud and clear  
831 read please examples?

S: 832 you must have a passport  
833 you have to have a passport  
834 you have got to have a passport  
T: 835 ok what’s the difference between  
these sentences?  
S: 836[+ + +]  
T: 837 ha? Look look at me!  
838 what is the difference between these  
sentences  
839 you must have a passport you have  
to have a passport you have got to  
have a passport  
S: 840 this  
T: 841 [they’re the same  
842 what do you wanna say?

S: 843 there is no difference  
T: 844 no difference huh good man  
845 they are the same  
846 they are all the same  
847 ok now read the information  
S:  [reads out the information]  
T: 848 so we use must have to or have got  
to show something is absolutely  
necessary ok!  
849 you must come to class if you wanna  
pass  
850 God bliss your teacher ok!  
851 today I’m very lucky huh  
852 ok continue  
S: 853 you must not bring fresh fruit to Iran  
T: 854 ok fresh fruit must not  
855 what does must not and can not  
856 what’s the difference between them?

S: 857 there is not difference  
T: 858 ok what does it mean here  
859 look you must not bring fresh fruits  
into the country  
860 you cannot bring fresh fruit into  
country  
861 it means that you are not both of  
these  
862 mean that you are not allowed to  
bring fruit ok  
863 it says cannot yes can’t …  
864 what does can give you?  
865 give you ability ha?  
866 mental physical so on so forth but  
here the [+ + +]  
867 you can if you want yeah  
868 you are not supposed to  
869 if somebody wants to bring [+ + +]  
into Iran in the airport are they  
gonna allow him to enter?  
870 absolutely not  
871 this is the law you cannot take fruit  
872 in America even in states we cannot  
take California oranges out of  
California  
873 we can only take few
874 you wanna take a box or carton they don't allow it

875 nor can you take it in

876 they take your car same thing

877 can’t do it

878 so read that information

S: (reads out the information)

T: 879 we can’t

880 it’s not allowed

S: 881 a lot of fruit

T: 882 no if you wanna bring an orange and put it in your pocket of course they are not supposed to take it

S: 883 [++] pocket for example 3 oranges in

T: 884 [it depends on the customs agent

885 depends on the kind of mood he is in

886 but he can say no if he wants

887 usually they’re nice people and they don’t say anything if you wanna bring two or three

S: 888 [to send it to another country

T: 889 [it’s

890 the seed

891 the seed is what they are worried about

S: 891 [++]

T: 892 you could bring a seed and plant it and this changes the I don’t know

893 I know I’m pretty sure that is something to do with the seeds

S: 894 grains

T: 895 seeds ok!

896 you plant it and grow! another tree so that’s why I think I am not sure

S: 897 [vegetables

T: 898 next!

S: (reads out)
that he wants to buy he needs the money

T: 924 good job next?
S: 925 he don’t have to take
T: 926 [he don’t?]
S: 927 he doesn’t
t: 928 he doesn’t good
S: 929 he doesn’t have to take fresh fruit with himself because he can buy it in Iran cheaper

T: 930 ok now use one of these
931 he doesn’t have to
S: 932 he doesn’t have to
t: 933 good job
934 how about you?
S: 935 a return airline ticket is necessary because he can’t find it in Iran

T: 936 a return airline ticket what?
S: 937 because
T: 938 read it again from beginning I can’t hear you guys
S: 939 airline ticket must be necessary because he may be can’t find it in Iran

T: 940 must be necessary!
941 a return airline ticket!
942 err he must buy a return airline ticket because he may not be able to find it in Iran
943 of course he can find it but [+ + +]
944 ok how about you?
S: 945 he doesn’t have to take an umbrella because we don’t have much rain and it is very cheaper in Iran

T: 946 no that’s all wrong
947 read it again slower
S: 948 he doesn’t have to take an umbrella

T: 949 take an umbrella where?
S: 950 to Iran
T: 951 where are you?
S: 952 I am 14
T: 953 you you
S: 954 I’m in Iran
T: 955 so he must he doesn’t he shouldn’t bring
956 you are here ok! 957 he shouldn’t bring?

S: 958 he shouldn’t bring an umbrella into Iran because Iran hasn’t much rain

T: 959 Iran doesn’t have much rain
S: 960 [much rain

T: 961 ok good and it’s cheaper to buy in Iran
962 good job one more person
S: 963 you mustn’t bring tapes and CDs into Iran because the customs officer make a problem for you

T: 964 customs officer err will make a problem for him!
965 we don’t need that customs officer will get him into problem ok now!
966 look at par- exercise three ok!
967 now we’re talking about somebody who need to take a drivers’ license ok!
968 now we will talk about the must have to have got to must not ok!
969 I want you to use them like know how to drive
970 we’re talking about somebody who wants to get a drivers’ license ok!
971 and these are the things he needs or he doesn’t need ok!
972 number 1 he must know how to drive
973 to get a drivers’ license ok!
974 number two?
S: 975 you must
T: 976 number two
S: 977 you must practice before the test
T: 978 you must practice what?
979 practice piano?
S: 980 driving
T: 981 driving good job
982 how about take a test?
S: 983 he has to
T: 984 [I can’t hear you
S: 985 he must take an eye test before
T: 986 he must take an eye test for what?
S: 987 to get driving license
T: 988 he must take an eye test?
SS: 989 [+] +]
T: 990 ok good so he must take an eye test to be able to get a drivers’ license right!
991 Take a written test!
992 M!
S: 993 he must take a written test
T: 994 he must take a written test!
S: 995 yes
T: 996 for what?
S: 997 [+] +]
T: 998 he must take a written test to be able to get a drivers license next?
999 How about a medical examination? ha?
SS: 1000 shouldn’t
T: 1001 we shouldn’t!
SS: 1002 he must
T: 1003 [he must have a medical examination!
SS: 1004 no
T: 1005 so what?
S: 1006 because he isn’t able to drive
1007 for example he has problem in his hand or er
T: 1008 he is handicapped
1009 but the officer is gonna take an exam he is not blind
S: 1010 before the exam before the exam at the before the the err eye test err one doctor say sit and stand
T: 1011 jump
S: 1012 yes jump
T: 1013 ok I don’t have a license in Iran so I don’t know
S: 1014 [you get in the United states?
S: 1015 if you drug err use drugs
T: 1016 [drugs!
S: 1017 yes and then stand and then shake his hand err
T: 1018 [shaking
S: 1019 shaking
T: 1020 really?
S: 1021 then he knows that you use drugs
T: 1022 they take can take a blood test I don’t know
S: 1023 yes medical examination
1024 after medical test
1025 first register say that if you have sickness before you register
T: 1026 ha good um ok next have a passport or a birth certificate ID!
S: 1027 yes
T: 1028 yes!
1029 In Iran!
SS: 1030 yes
T: 1031 you have a passport?
SS: 1032 no birth certificate
T: 1033 you have a passport?
SS: 1034 no birth certificate
T: 1035 so now we are talking about having a passport or a birth certificate?
1036 you have to have a passport or birth certificate to get a drivers' license?
SS: 1037 yes
T: 1038 you must sort of what?
S: 1039 [++]
T: 1040 and?
S: 1041 you must sort of what?
T: 1042 [ha! You have to have your!]
S: 1043 [++]
T: 1044 you must pass the driving test?
1045 you must!
SS: 1046 you must
T: 1047 you must pass the driving test
1048 you must have a high school diploma?
S: 1049 you
T: 1050 you!
S: 1051 can
T: 1052 can but you don't have to complete M?
1081 I think it’s really stupid to go and do a driving test in somebody else’s car.
1082 and you haven’t practised it because it’s not the car you gonna drive.
1083 I think it’s stupid.
1084 but the other people say you should be able to drive in any car.

S:
1085 it’s correct [+ ++] automatic.

T:
1086 do what?
1087 I’m ganna drive it
1088 I’m not gonna drive your car
1089 I’m gonna drive my car.

SS:
1090 [+ + +]

T:
1091 ok! This is- that’s the truth.

S:
1092 [+ + +]

T:
1093 ok! That’s what I’m saying.
1094 you must practice.
1095 how do you practice practice in the streets.
1096 so which car do you use?
1097 your car.
1098 the car you’re gonna drive.
1099 that’s your car not anybody else’s car.
1100 you gonna drive your car.
1101 you practice with your own car.
**T9 (2ND Session)**

T: 1. any questions?
2. Err last session I taught you (. ) going to the doctor(,.) and a bad toothache
3. you haven’t questions?
4. so first of all yes?

S: 5. what’s the meaning get

T: 6. [what’s the meaning of]

S: 7. what’s the meaning of get rid of?

T: 8. when you don’t want some people
9. when something bothers you you try to get rid of it
10. understand?
11. try to get rid of it?
12. so for the reading
13. then we will have a quick review of vocabulary unit 7
14. so we will have a quick review of vocabulary unit seven
15. health care is the reading which we’re going to cover
16. I taught you about reported speech ok?
17. So we’re going to cover the drills
18. and if we have time I’m going to teach you the vocabulary of unit 8
19. any questions before we start?
20. Thank you very much
21. So be quiet
22. Mr A! Mr D! close your books

SS: (act out the dialogue)

T: 23. thank you questions?

S: 24. why did the dentist inject some Nebokane?

S: 25. what did the dentist?

S: 26. why

S: 27. because he wanted to err he want to get he want- he wanted to pull the tooth of

S: 28. what did the dentist do after he talked [++ +]?

S: 29. [++ +]

S: 30. what had the dentist done before the extract Sam’s bad tooth?

T: 31. before?

S: 32. before extracted

T: 33. extracting!

S: 34. Sam’s bad tooth

T: 35. thank you sit down

S: 36. how did dentist

T: 37. [how did the dentist]

S: 38. the dentist

39. how did the dentist solved his problem?

S: 40. first he injected some [++ +]

41. then he pulled the bad tooth out

T: 42. then the dentist pulled his bad tooth out

S: 43. what was awful for him inject or extracted tooth?

T: 44. what was?

S: 45. awful for him the inject or

T: 46. [injection or]

S: 47. injection or extraction extracted tooth

S: 48. why did the dentist popped around his mouth?

T: 49. why?

S: 50. why did the dentist

T: 51. [why did the dentist good]
S: 52 pop around his mouth
S: 53 because he could pull his tooth take out injection
T: 54 because he wanted to find the bad tooth
T: 55 so repeat (repetition)
T: 56 reading Mr I?
S: (reading out)
S: 57 which part of his body did he [++] at first?
T: 58 which- what part of his body did the doctor examine first? Ha?
S: 59 yes the doctor first examined his tongue
T: 60 it sometimes strikes me means sometimes I come to think that ha?
61 To think that some people do not approve of seeing their doctor so on and so forth ok?
62 something that strikes me
63 our family doctors
64 I'm I phoned my family doctor and managed to etc
65 don't use or(.)or and before etc(.)etc means and(.)and um?
66 And others
67 err I phoned him and made an appointment in the past
68 the doctor had come back
69 anyway any questions?
70 yes?
S: 71 we should use
T: 72 [should we use
S: 73 should we use the subject in the second part of err sentences
74 past perfect for example
75 but he had [++] people he went to the clinic?
99 after the arrived at the doctor’s office
he did such and such and such
100 and aha don’t forget we use a lot with
both countable and uncountable nouns
as you know ok? Yes?
101 but the difference is that when we use
a lot a lot of with: countable nouns the
noun which follows a lot of must be
plural
102 a lot of questions
103 the doctor asked me a lot of questions
ha?
104 I have a lot of money ok?
105 and err()Mr M!
S: (reads out)
S: 106 why did err why did doctor advice
after check the patient?
T: 107 why did the?
S: 108 why did err why did doctor err advise
err check the patient
T: 109 why did the?
S: 110 why did doctor advise
T: 111 why did THE
doctor
S: 112 the doctor advise after check the
patient?
S: 113 [+] that the patient err haven’t a
serious problem and should just rest
and doesn’t have any [+]?
T: 114 so he understood that he DIDN’T have
S: 115 didn’t have
T: 116 G!
S: 117 how long had he been waiting before
he saw doctor
T: 118 saw THE doctor
S: 119 saw the doctor
T: 120 he could see the doctor
S: 121 he had waited for five minutes
T: 122 he had been
123 repeat the question!
T: 124 so he was JUST exhausted
125 the doctor told him that he was JUST
126 the was past
127 err you should get a change of AIR at
surroundings
128 not weather ok?
129 walk along the cliffs
130 the doctor advised him to walk along
the? cliffs
SS: 131 [cliffs
T: 132 or into the?
133 the country
SS: 134 [country
T: 135 he gave him some medicine
136 not he took him some he gave him
some medicine ha?
137 any questions?
138 yes!
S: 139 what’s the meaning of it would do you
a world of good
T: 140 it would be useful ha?
141 It would help you feel better
S: 142 what happened to the patient before the
doctor came back?
T: 143 what happened to the?
S: 144 in the office
T: 145 what did- what did the patient do?
146 He just went into the room and
collapsed on a chair
S: 147 you said I I feel as fit as a fiddle
means?
T: 462
148

S: 149 I am in very good shape
T: 150 any questions?
S: 151 what was the result of the patient?
T: 152 what was the?
S: 153 result of the patient
T: 154 you mean what?
S: 155[+] after err the
T: 156 [ha! what did the err what did he conclude at the end?
S: 157 conclude?
T: 158 conclude to come to result
159 what did he conclude at the end?
160 any questions?
S: 161 I have a question about get it off your chest err
162 can we say to a friend for example when he or she comes to our house get
it off your chest for example
T: 163 [no no let’s talk about it
S: 164 let’s talk about the word
165 err we can say that instead of make yourself at home?
T: 166 I don’t think so
167 get it off your chest means let’s talk about it
168 let’s talk about your problem
S: let’s
T: 169 let’s talk about your problem understand?
170 ok so vocabulary of unit seven please?
171 ready?
172 one two three start!
(students recite the words in chorus)
197 every day sicknesses?
S: 198 every day
T: 199 HE spends, he spends most of his
time diagnosing everyday?
200 sicknesses
S: 201 sicknesses
T: 202 ok what do the specialists usually do
for a patient?
S: 203 he wrote a prescription for [+ + +]
T: 204 what?
205 answer everybody!
206 What do the specialists usually do for a
patient?
SS: 207 specialists usually arrange a time err
T: 208 usually?
S: 209 usually arrange arranges a time for
patient err nursing home or hospital
T: 210 so other what would specialists do for
a patient?
211 he would?
S: 212 usually operate them
T: 213 he usually operates them?
S: 214 he usually gives some [+ + +] cereal or
err
T: 215 no! he may send the patient to the
hospital for treatment
216 or a patient may be advised to see a
specialist when the sickness is serious
or they need major operations
217 the specialists may then arrange a time
218 arrange a time for the patient(,) to be
admitted into a?
219 hospital
220 understand?
221 what can an oculist do for you?
SS: 222 [+ + +]
T: 223 A! what can oculist do for you?
S: 224 he check err he check the eyes
T: 225 [checks?
S: 226 err
T: 227 he?
S: 228 tests
T: 229 examines
S: 230 examines the eyes and err and wrote
and write a [+ + +]
S: 231 an oculist first examines the eyes and
after that [+ ++] to the problem
232 for example some are short-sighted or
the others err gives [+ ++] or contact
lenses to err
T: 233 so he examines your sights and then he
write out prescriptions for?
S: 234 for the option
T: 235 for optician
SS: 236 optician
T: 237 for the opticians
238 for the opticians
239 what does some infectious decreases
commonly caught by children?
S: 240 [+ + +]
T: 241 what are some of the infectious
diseases commonly caught by
children?
SS: 242 chicken pox [+ + +]
T: 243 again what are some infectious
diseases commonly caught by
children?
244 Scarlet fever, flu and chicken pox are commonly caught by children.

T: 245 caught by ha?
246 are some of the diseases commonly caught by?
247 children
248 infectious diseases such as chicken pox, the flu and scarlet fever are commonly caught by children.
249 what are some of the common things used to prevent or cure an illness?

SS: 250 pills
T: 251 close your book!
S: 252 I want to see the question.
T: 253 what are some of the common things used to prevent or cure illnesses?

SS: 254 [+ + +]
T: 255 M!
S: 256 pills injections syrups
T: 257 A! you!
S: 258 ointments syringe
T: 259 injection
S: 260 injection
T: 261 injections
S: 262 injections and err
T: 263 [+ + +] ha?
264 are some of the things used to prevent or cure an illness
265 so open your books to page 80
266 please! (. ) find different tenses go on!
S: 267 general practitioners spend most of their time diagnosing everyday illness such as cough and minor pain simple present.

T: 268 simple present (several other sentences)
S: 269 other patients may be advised to see a specialist is a major part of this sentence and I don’t know what do we say it in English.
T: 270 passive voice may be advised
S: 271 I don’t know
T: 272 passive voice
S: 273 passive voice
T: 274 ha? may be advised to?
S: 275 passive voice
T: 276 now I’m talking about tenses 277 what tense is it?
S: 278 present
T: 279 what kind of present?
S: 280 err present err unreal
T: 281 what?
S: 282 simple
S: 283 simple present
T: 284 simple present
S: 285 why simple present
T: 286 may be advised! Ok?
287 so other!
S: 288 some of the commonest things used to prevent or cure the condition are pills ointments sleeping pills syrups injection bandage
289 err disinfecting is simple past
T: 290 why?
S:
291 used
T: 292 so no it’s simple present
293 some of the other things which are
used
S: 294 special parts of the body are treat-
T: 295 are treated
S: 296 treated by special doctors simple
present
T: 297 simple present
298 why are most of- why are- almost all
the sentences simple present?
299 why?
S: 300 because it is generally about patients
and err
T: 301 whenever we talk about health and
healthcare we use simple present?
S: 302 generally not always
S: 303 talking present about the facts
T: 304 ha!
305 Because it talks about the facts habits
routines ha?
306 when we talk about these things we
use?
S: 307 simple present
T: 308 simple present tense ok?
309 the facts the sun rises in the east set in
the?
310 west
311 this is a fact ha?
312 understand?
313 so find different kinds of sentences and
be quick please!
S: 314 sometimes the original doctor is a
surgeon so he himself may perform the
operation
315 statement
T: 316 statement
S: 317 I think all of them is statement
T: 318 I think all of them?
S: 319 all of the sentences is
SS: 320 [are
S: 321 are statements
T: 322 are statements ok
323 so what is this reading about?
S: 324 it’s about the treatment of the doctors
some of the treatments of the doctors
and
T: 325 treatment of doctors?
S: 326 the treatment for the patients and the
kind of cure and the err the equipments
for the cure
T: 327 equipments?
S: 328 I think
T: 329 isn’t is equipment countable or
uncountable?
330 do you remember?
SS: 331 uncountable
T: 332 this is why I told you to open your
dictionaries
333 last session equipment is
UNCOUNTABLE understand?
334 the equipment used?
335 to cure diseases
336 it is about how doctors ha?
337 how doctors cure patients and the
equipment they use to?
338 ha?
339 to do so to cure diseases what?
S: 340 and every kind of illnesses have an
special doctor for err specialists for it
T: 341 so every illness has?
an specialist

T:
  343 an specialist ok?
  344 should be treated or should be cured by
  345 a?

S:
  346 it is about the food that keep us healthy
  347 when our illness is serious the doctor
  advise us to refer to a specialist doctor
  348 about the healthy and classes of curing
  the sickness
  349 it’s about?
  350 health?

S:
  351 it talks about health and classes of
  medicines
  352 classes
  353 classes
  354 classes of?
  355 [+ + +] diseases and? Um?
  356 the equipment we use to do so
  357 and some of illnesses are contagious
  and children easily caught them
  358 and children easily caught them?
  359 easily catch them
  360 catch them
  361 about the kinds of disease and err
  362 getting disease
  363 and?
  364 and how they err spread and they how
  we stop them and cure them
  365 how about [+ + +] tell us?
  366 it’s about what the doctor do one by
  one
  367 why doc- what?
  368 what the doctor do one
  369 [what the doctor
does
  370 does
  371 or what doctors do
  372 what doctors do one by one and err
  they have err
  373 it’s about what the doctor does to cure
  ha?
  374 a illness or what doctors do to cure
  illnesses or the stages of curing an
  illness and the process of curing an
  illness
  375 understand?
  376 [they had a (. ) private cure
  377 ha! And each illness has its own
  treatment
  378 [treatment
  379 treatment ha?
  380 what else?
  381 the part of this reading it’s about
  382 [is about
  383 is about err some of diseases
  384 [some
diseases
  385 some disease caught by err you in
  childhood or
  386 [by children
  387 by children or a: by old people such as
  blood pressure err blood sugar I think
  and:
he deals with everyday sicknesses such as the flu minor pain these things ok?
So let's see what he does
He usually reassures his patients and sends them with a prescription
so he usually has
he usually tells his patients that
his or her patients that there is nothing wrong with them ok?
and he writes he or she writes a prescription for them ok?
give them prescription so that they can go to the?

417 drug store
418 drug store
419 and?

420 fill it fill the prescription ha?
But if a more serious illness needing immediate attention comes his way like pneumonia and appendices he then sends the patient to the hospital for treatment
if a patient comes to his office ha?
with a more dangerous or more serious illness such as pneumonia and appendices the general practitioner sends the patient to the hospital for treatment because he should be cured
treated yeah

425 excuse me attention comes his way comes to the office?
other patients may be advised to see specialist if the illness is serious or they need major operations
so some people need major operations um?
like when you have a heart problem you have to be sent to a hospital
err major operation
the specialist may then arrange a time for the patient to be admitted into a hospital or nursing home where all the necessary equipment is on hand
what is the meaning of this sentence?

available
433 everything is available
T: 434 where?
S: 435 in hospital
T: 436 in a hospital ok? 437 everything? 438 every equipment is available in a hospital for!
S: 439 operation or:
T: 440 for an operation 441 for a major operation ha? 442 and so the specialist or the doctor sends the patient to the hospital or a? S: 443 nursing
T: 444 [nursing home well 445 sometimes the original doctor is a surgeon so he can may perform the operation 446 what is the meaning of this sentence?
S: 447 sometimes the [++] himself surgeon and he operate
T: 448 [an?] S: 449 can operate the patient and he can do err such as a specialist S: 450 some of the common doctors are surgeon, surgery
T: 451 [can do surgeries S: 452 can do surgeries and T: 453 [some of the general practitioners you mean? S: 454 some of the general doctors 455 yes they are they can do surgeries T: 456 some of the specialists are surgeons too aha?
S: 457 no after seven years in university they become general doctors but they can do some surgeries
T: 458 then they would they won’t call them S: 459 but general doctor but T: 460 general doctors but general practitioners we call them specialists ha? S: 461 ok if we call the specialist what we call the first? 462 and the people who(,) after seven years they continue their study for two years and after that for two years again for four years? 463 we call THEM specialist? T: 464 after seven years a doctor become a general practitioner 465 the general doctor yes then? 466 specialist 467 then if you want be a surgeon in Iran this is the way I believe ha? 468 this the way it is in Iran 469 I don’t know anything about other countries 470 sometimes the original doctor is a surgeon that is you go to a surgeon’s office ha? 471 So he himself he or she ha? 472 operates you that is he she doesn’t send you to a surgeon ok? 473 some diseases are infectious or contagious like those commonly caught by children for example chicken pox 474 while others may simply be due to old age ok? 475 so what is this sentence about? 476 the meaning of the sentence? S: 477 people in different ages can ge- err can err they may become ill some special ills for example children T: 478 [some special illnesses S: 479 illnesses err for example
480 children usually get chicken pox and some infectious illnesses
but the older people usually err get some other illness like rheumatism
S:
483 rheumatism and err(.) heart err heart attack for example and err some others
484 old age cause many problem for
T: 485 prob?
SS: 486 problems
T: 487 so people of different ages suffer from different diseases ok?
488 children usually suffer from contagious diseases because they are: they are not very careful ok?
489 they touch everything 490 they put everything in the mouth 491 they err they talk to everyone ok? Yes?
492 so they usually have they usually suffer from contagious diseases ok?
493 while older people older people may suffer different from other(.) diseases such as(.) blood pressure(.) and indigestion and rheumatism far more than the young
494 you see what it is people err older people may suffer from 495 indigestion rheumatism heart problems and blood pressure far more often than the young
496 understand? Yeah?
497 still other costs of ill health may be due to misfortunes or accidents
498 so(,) these misfortunes and accidents may cause?
SS: 499 diseases
T: 500 diseases or illnesses ok?
501 Example of these are burns called [+] blood poisoning, food poisoning and bone fractures
502 so these are some of the um? Some of the illnesses and health troubles due to accidents yes?
S: 503 what does misfortune mean?
T: 504 misfortune means bad luck(.) bad luck
S: 505 excuse me and blood poisoning?
T: 506 blood poisoning 507 it's a disease 508 it's a very dangerous disease 509 understand?
510 some of the commonest things used to prevent or cure these conditions are pill powders ointments sleeping pills injections disinfectors and [+] 511 so sometimes, sometimes we try to prevent the disease ok?
512 prevent a disease but some when- when the disea- when someone gets sick then we try to cure it
513 understand? Yes? So in order to prevent or cure diseases ok? We make use of different(.) ha?
514 we make use of different equipment ha?
515 such as these pills powders ointments sleeping pills ha?
516 injections bandages disinfectants and?
SS: 517 serums 518 serums and serums 519 the last paragraph 520 YOU talk about the last paragraph
S: 521 special parts of the body for example eyes ears or [+] needs err
T: 522 [need
S: 523 need yeah need specialist 524 need specialists for example for our eye
525 we went to we go(.) oculists
526 and for curing our for example teeth tooth
T:
to cure
S:

to curing
T:

to cure
S:

to cure our teeth we go to a dentist and
and they use different equipment to-
for to cure us
S:

for special parts our body we should go
to the specialist
because the err( )skilled to this part of
the body and we go err to them and err
they examine our body and [+ +] 
prescription and err check our- check
er our body
T:

to examine
S:

that examine us with special equipment
T:

equipments
S:

equipments
T:

H! what is the last part of the [+ +]?
S:

the last part was about
T:

is
S:

is about special illness or
T:

special?
S:

special illness
T:

illnesses
S:

illnesses and the special and cure many
T:

[we should?]
S:

we should go
T:

special illness?
S:

yes we should go to a special doctor
T:

no
S:

for example for the sight we should go
T:

to check our sight we should go to a?
S:

occultist
when our teeth [+ +] we should
T:

when
S:

the dentist
T:

the dentist
S:

each doctor err each doctor or each
specialist has a err has a special
equipment to cure
T:

has special equipments
S:

special equipment to cure the people
err
T:

to cure people
S:

people err for instance dentist ha-
dentists have forceps [+ +] and err
drills to fill in the
T:

to fill or?
S:

to fill or move out or extract bad tooth
T:

bad teeth
S:

bad teeth
T:

ok thank you other?
S:

for each part of our body there are
specialists like [+ +] cure that part
err and when we when special part of our body has problem we should go to the err doctor related the err that part of body
t: 571 so we should go to the? Ha?
572the specialist
s: 573specialist for example
574if our eyes has problem we should go to the oculist and our teeth
575if we have problem in our tooth we should go to the dentist
t: 576so if our tooth ache if our tooth- our teeth sorry if our teeth ache we should go to the dentist
577if our if we have problems with our sight we should go to the oculist ok?
578so special parts of the body are treated by special doctors understand?
579so you can’t go to?
580to the dentist for short-sightedness
581we should go to an?
582oculist
583dentists extract or fill teeth and make denture using equipments such as drills forceps and?
584water sprays ok?
585so can they extract your tooth when it is bad ha?
586sometimes they fill it ha?
587and they also make dentures for older people um?
588and the equipment they use are drills forceps and water sprays
589oculists examine eyes test eye and write prescriptions for opticians ok?
590so an oculist can tests your? Ha? Sight ha?
591to see what’s wrong
592are you short-sighted
593then so he write a prescription for the?
594optician to make(().glasses for you ok?
595to make glasses for you
596opticians make glasses or contact lenses
597you know contact lenses are very popular nowadays ok? Yes?
598people prefer to wear contact lenses than glasses
599altogether it takes several doctors to keep you healthy
600so several doctors should work together in order to keep you?
s: 601healthy
t: 602healthy ok?
603any questions? yes?
s: 604what does drill mean?
t: 605drill?
606So when go to the doc- when you go to a dentist and he wants to fill your tooth first he uses a drill understand? Yes?
607or you use a drill to make a hole in the wall ha?
608Black and Decker ha?
609Makita yes?
s: 610admitted admitted it to?
t: 611to be accepted
s: 612optician?
t: 613optician is a person who makes glasses
s: 614excuse me opticians make glasses or contact lenses
615what’s the meaning of make?
616for contact lenses opticians make glasses or contact lenses
t: 617some people
s: 618[how can they make contact lenses it means they suggest
t: 619[I don't know
s: 620that’s wrong
t: 621I’ve never used I’ve never used contact lenses
s: 622I use one for seven years
t: 623did you buy them?
S:
  624 yes
T:
  625 ok
S:
  626 and only two or three factories in the world can make these lenses
  627 what’s the meaning opticians make?
T:
  628 I don’t know
  629 any questions?
  630 so please close your books